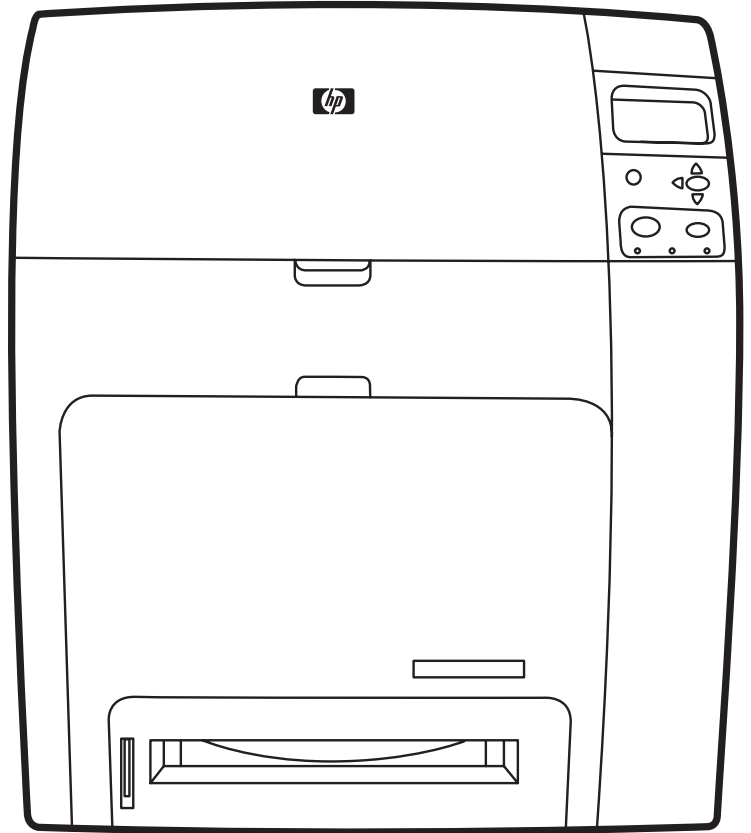


HP Color LaserJet 4700

User Guide



HP Color LaserJet 4700 Series Printer

User Guide



Copyright and License

© 2005 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical errors or omissions contained herein.

Part number: Q7491-90953

Edition 1: 11/2005

Trademark Credits

Adobe® is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® and CorelDRAW™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

Energy Star® and the Energy Star logo® are U.S. registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

Microsoft® is a U.S. registered trademark of the Microsoft Corporation.

Netscape Navigator is a U.S. trademark of Netscape Communications.

PANTONE® Colors generated may not match PANTONE-identified standards. Consult current PANTONE Publications for accurate color. PANTONE® and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone, Inc. © Pantone, Inc., 2000.

PostScript® is a trademark of Adobe Systems.

TrueType™ is a U.S. trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Windows®, MS Windows®, and Windows NT® are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

HP customer care

Online services

For 24-hour access to information using a modem or Internet connection:

World Wide Web URL: for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers, updated HP printer software, product and support information, and printer drivers in several languages can be obtained from <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>. (Sites are in English.)

Visit: http://www.hp.com/support/net_printing for information about network printing using HP Jetdirect print servers.

HP Instant Support Professional Edition (ISPE) is a suite of Web-based troubleshooting tools for desktop computing and printing products. ISPE helps you quickly identify, diagnose, and resolve computing and printing problems. The ISPE tools may be accessed from <http://instantsupport.hp.com>.

Telephone support

HP provides free telephone support during the warranty period. When you call, you will be connected to a responsive team waiting to help you. For the telephone number for your country/region, see the flyer that shipped in the box with the product. You can also visit <http://www.hp.com>, and then click **Contact HP**, and then click **Contact HP Worldwide**. Before calling HP, have the following information ready: product name and serial number, date of purchase, and description of the problem.

You can also find support on the Internet at <http://www.hp.com>. Click the **support & drivers** block.

Software utilities, drivers, and electronic information

Visit: http://www.hp.com/go/clj4700_software for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer. The Web page for the drivers might be in English, but you can download the drivers themselves in several languages.

Call: See the flyer that shipped in the box with the printer.

HP direct ordering for accessories or supplies

In the United States, supplies can be ordered from <http://www.hp.com/sbso/product/supplies>. In Canada, supplies can be ordered from <http://www.hp.ca/catalog/supplies>. In Europe, supplies can be ordered from <http://www.hp.com/supplies>. In Asia-Pacific, supplies can be ordered from <http://www.hp.com/paper/>.

Accessories can be ordered from <http://www.hp.com/go/accessories>.

Call: 1-800-538-8787 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-3154 (Canada).

HP service information

To locate HP-Authorized Dealers, call 1-800-243-9816 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-3867 (Canada). For service for your product, call the customer support number for your country/region. See the flyer that shipped in the box with the printer.

HP service agreements

Call: 1-800-835-4747 (U.S.) or 1-800-268-1221 (Canada).

Extended Service: 1-800-446-0522

HP support and information for Macintosh computers

Visit: <http://www.hp.com/go/macosex> for Macintosh OS X support information and HP subscription service for driver updates.

Visit: <http://www.hp.com/go/mac-connect> for products designed specifically for the Macintosh user.

Table of contents

1 Printer basics

Quick access to printer information	2
World Wide Web links	2
User guide links	2
Where to look for more information	2
Setting up the printer	2
Using the printer	3
Printer configurations	4
HP Color LaserJet 4700 (product number Q7491A)	4
HP Color LaserJet 4700n (product number Q7492A)	4
HP Color LaserJet 4700dn (product number Q7493A)	5
HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn (product number Q7494A)	6
HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ (product number Q7495A)	6
Printer features	7
Walk around	10
Printer software	12
Software	12
Software features	12
Driver Autoconfiguration	12
Update Now	12
HP Driver Preconfiguration	12
Installing the printing system software	13
Installing Windows printing system software for direct connections	13
Installing Windows printing system software for networks	14
Setting up a Windows computer to use the network printer with Windows-sharing	15
Installing the software after the parallel or USB cable has been connected	15
Uninstalling the software	15
Removing software from Windows operating systems	16
Software for networks	16
HP Web Jetadmin	16
UNIX	17
Utilities	17
HP Easy Printer Care Software	17
Embedded Web server	17
Features	18
Other components and utilities	18
Printer drivers	19
Supported printer drivers	19

Additional drivers	19
Select the correct printer driver	20
Printer-driver Help (Windows)	20
Gaining access to the printer drivers	20
Printer drivers for Macintosh computers	22
Supported printer drivers	22
Gaining access to the printer drivers	22
Software for Macintosh computers	24
Installing Macintosh printing system software for networks	24
Installing Macintosh printing system software for direct connections (USB)	25
To remove software from Macintosh operating systems	26
Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh	27
Opening the HP Printer Utility	27
Printing a cleaning page	27
Printing a configuration page	27
Viewing supplies status	28
Ordering supplies online and using other support features	28
Uploading a file to the printer	28
Uploading fonts to the printer	29
Updating the firmware	29
Activating the two-sided printing (duplexing) mode	29
Activating the Economode printing mode	29
Changing the toner density	30
Changing the resolution settings	30
Locking or unlocking printer storage devices	30
Saving or printing stored jobs	30
Configuring trays	31
Changing network settings	31
Opening the embedded Web server	31
Setting up e-mail alerts	32
Print media specifications	33
Supported media weights and sizes	33

2 Control panel

Introduction	38
Display	38
Accessing the control panel from a computer	40
Control panel buttons	41
Interpreting control panel indicator lights	42
Interpreting stapler/stacker indicator light codes	43
Control panel menus	45
Getting started basics	45
Menu hierarchy	46
To enter the menus	46
Retrieve job menu	46
Information menu	46
Paper handling menu	47
Configure device menu	47
Diagnostics menu	49
Retrieve job menu	50

Information menu	51
Paper handling menu	52
Configure device menu	53
Printing menu	53
Print quality menu	54
System setup menu	56
Stapler/stacker menu	59
I/O menu	60
Resets menu	62
Diagnostics menu	63
Changing printer control panel configuration settings	64
Job storage limit	64
Setting the job storage limit	64
Job held timeout	64
Setting the job held timeout	64
Show IP address	65
Showing the IP address	65
Color/black mix	65
Setting the color/black mix	65
Tray behavior options	66
Setting the printer to use the requested tray	66
Setting manually feed prompt	67
Setting the printer default for PS defer media	67
Setting the printer to use size/type prompt	68
Setting the printer to use another tray	68
Setting the printer to duplex blank pages	68
Setting the printer to rotate images	69
Sleep delay	69
Setting sleep delay	69
Disabling/enabling sleep mode	70
Wake time	70
Setting the wake time	70
Display brightness	71
Setting the display brightness	71
Personality	72
Setting the personality	72
Clearable warnings	72
Setting the clearable warnings	72
Auto continue	73
Setting auto continue	73
Replace supplies	73
Setting replace supplies response	74
Order at	74
Setting order at response	74
Color supply out	74
Setting color supply out response	75
Jam recovery	75
Setting jam recovery response	75
RAM disk	76
Changing RAM disk behavior	76

Language	76
Selecting the language	76
Selecting the language if the display is in a language you do not understand ...	77
Using the printer control panel in shared environments	78

3 I/O configuration

Network configuration	80
Configuring TCP/IP parameters	80
Manually configuring TCP/IP parameters from the printer control panel	80
Setting an IP address	80
Setting the subnet mask	81
Setting the default gateway	82
Disabling network protocols (optional)	82
Disabling IPX/SPX	83
Disabling DLC/LLC	83
Disabling AppleTalk	84
Parallel configuration	85
USB configuration	86
Auxiliary connection configuration	87
HP Jetdirect print servers	88
Available software solutions	88
Wireless printing	89
IEEE 802.11 standard	89
Bluetooth	89

4 Printing tasks

Controlling print jobs	92
Source	92
Type and size	92
Print setting priorities	92
Selecting print media	94
Media to avoid	94
Paper that can damage the printer	94
Automatic media type sensing (auto sense mode)	95
Tray 1 sensing	95
Tray 2–N sensing	96
Configuring input trays	97
Configuring trays when the printer gives a prompt	97
Configuring a tray when loading paper	97
Configuring a tray to match print job settings	98
Configuring trays using the paper handling menu	98
Configuring Tray 2 and optional trays for a custom paper size	99
Printing from Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)	100
Loading Tray 1	100
Printing envelopes from Tray 1	101
Loading envelopes into Tray 1	101
Printing envelopes	102
Printing from Tray 2 or the optional trays	102
Loading detectable standard-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays	103
Loading undetectable standard-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays	105

Loading custom-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays	107
Printing on special media	109
Transparencies	109
Glossy paper	109
Colored paper	110
Envelopes	110
Labels	110
Heavy paper	110
HP LaserJet Tough paper	111
Preprinted forms and letterhead	111
Recycled paper	112
Using features in the printer driver	113
Creating and using quick sets	113
Creating and using watermarks	114
Resizing documents	114
Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver	115
Using different paper/covers	115
Printing a blank first page	115
Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper	115
Printing on both sides of the paper	116
To print on both sides by using the duplex-printing accessory	116
To print on both sides manually	117
Layout options for printing on both sides	117
Setting the stapling options	118
Setting the color options	118
Using the HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box	119
Using the Services tab	119
Using features in the Macintosh printer driver	121
Creating and using presets in Mac OS X	121
Printing a cover page	121
Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper	122
Printing on both sides of the paper	122
Setting the color options	123
Two-sided (duplex) printing	125
Control panel settings for automatic two-sided printing	126
To enable or disable two-sided printing from the printer control panel	126
Options for binding two-sided printing jobs	127
Manual two-sided printing	127
Printing booklets	128
Using the stapler/stacker	129
Configuring the printer driver to recognize the stapler/stacker	129
Selecting the printer behavior at staples out	130
Printing to the stapler/stacker	130
Selecting the stapler in an application	130
Selecting the stapler at the control panel	131
Job offset	131
Paper orientation when a stapler/stacker is installed	132
Special printing situations	133
Printing a different first page	133
Printing a blank back cover	133

Printing on custom-size media	133
Stopping a print request	134
Stopping the current print job from the printer control panel	134
Stopping the current print job from a software application	134
Job storage features	135
Proofing and holding a job	135
Printing stored jobs	135
Deleting stored jobs	136
Private jobs	136
Printing a private job	136
Deleting a private job	137
Mopier mode	137
Storing a print job	138
Quick-copying a job	138
Managing memory	140

5 Managing the printer

Printer information pages	142
Menu map	142
Configuration page	142
Supplies status page	143
Usage page	143
Demo page	144
Print CMYK samples	144
Print RGB samples	144
File directory	145
PCL or PS font list	145
Event log	145
Using the embedded Web server	146
Accessing the embedded Web server	146
Information tab	147
Settings tab	147
Setting the real-time clock	148
Networking tab	148
Other links	148
Using the HP Easy Printer Care Software	149
Supported operating systems	149
To use the HP Easy Printer Care Software	149
HP Easy Printer Care Software sections	149

6 Color

Using color	152
HP ImageREt 3600	152
Paper selection	152
Color options	152
sRGB	152
Printing in four colors — CMYK	153
CMYK ink set emulation (PostScript only)	153
Color matching	154
PANTONE® color matching	154

Sample book color matching	154
Printing color samples	155
Managing printer color options on Windows computers	156
Print in grayscale	156
RGB Color (Color Themes)	156
Automatic or manual color adjustment	156
Manual color options	157
Restricting color printing	158
Managing printer color options on Macintosh computers	159
Print Color as Gray	159
Advanced color options for text, graphics, and photographs	159
Halftone options	159
Neutral Grays	159
RGB Color	160
Edge Control	160

7 Maintenance

Managing print cartridges	162
HP print cartridges	162
Non-HP print cartridges	162
Print cartridge authentication	162
HP fraud hotline	162
Print cartridge storage	163
Print cartridge life expectancy	163
Checking the print cartridge life	163
Using the printer control panel	163
Using the embedded Web server	163
Using HP Easy Printer Care Software	163
Using HP Web Jetadmin	163
Changing print cartridges	164
Replacing a print cartridge	164
To replace the print cartridge	164
Replacing supplies	167
Locating supplies	167
Supply replacement guidelines	167
Making room around the printer for replacing supplies	167
Approximate replacement intervals for supplies	168
Replacing the stapler cartridge	168
Using the cleaning page	172
Configuring alerts	175

8 Problem solving

Basic troubleshooting checklist	178
Factors affecting printer performance	179
Troubleshooting information pages	180
Configuration page	180
Paper path test page	180
Registration page	181
Event log	181
Control panel message types	183

Status messages	183
Warning messages	183
Error messages	183
Critical error messages	183
Control panel messages	184
Message listing	184
Paper jams	210
Paper jam recovery	210
To disable paper jam recovery	211
Common causes of paper jams	212
Paper jams	212
Clearing jams	213
Jam in Tray 1	213
Jam in Tray 2 or optional trays	214
Jams in top cover area	215
Clearing a jam in the top cover area	216
Clearing other jams	218
Jams in the stapler/stacker	220
Staple jams	227
Media-handling problems	230
Multiple sheets	230
Stapler/stacker	230
Incorrect page size	231
Incorrect tray	231
Automatic feed error	232
Tray 2 or optional tray feed error	232
Special media feed error	233
Envelope printing error	233
Output quality	234
Duplexing error	234
Printer response problems	235
Control panel display is blank	235
Printer does not print	235
Printer not receiving data	236
Printer selection	237
Printer control panel problems	238
Control panel setting	238
Selecting optional trays	238
Incorrect printer output	239
Incorrect fonts	239
Symbol sets	239
Drifting text	239
Output errors	239
Partial printout	240
Guidelines for printing with different fonts	240
Software application problems	241
System selection through software	241
Font selection from software	241
Color selection from software	241
Optional trays and duplexer recognition	241

Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems	243
Solving problems with Mac OS 9.x	243
Solving problems with Mac OS X	245
Color printing problems	249
Printout color error	249
Incorrect shade	249
Missing color	249
Cartridge error	250
Color match error	250
Print quality troubleshooting	251
Print quality problems associated with media	251
Overhead transparency defects	251
Print quality problems associated with the environment	252
Print quality problems associated with jams	252
Print quality troubleshooting pages	252
Print quality troubleshooting tool	252
Calibrating the printer	253
Repetitive defect ruler	253
Print quality defect chart	254

Appendix A Working with memory and print server cards

Printer memory and fonts	260
Installing a hard disk, memory, and fonts	261
Installing a hard drive	261
Installing DDR memory DIMMs	263
Installing a flash memory card	268
Enabling memory	272
To enable memory for Windows 98 and Me	272
To enable memory for Windows 2000 and XP	272
Installing an HP Jetdirect print server card	273
To install an HP Jetdirect print server card	273

Appendix B Supplies and accessories

Ordering directly through the embedded Web server (for printers with network connections)	278
Part numbers	279

Appendix C Service and Support

Hewlett-Packard limited warranty statement	284
Print cartridge limited warranty statement	285
Fuser and transfer unit limited warranty statement	286
HP maintenance agreements	287
On-site service agreements	287
Priority on-site service	287
Next-day on-site service	287
Weekly (volume) on-site service	287

Appendix D Printer specifications

Physical dimensions	290
Electrical specifications	291

Acoustic emissions	292
Environmental specifications	293

Appendix E Regulatory information

FCC regulations	296
FCC regulations	296
Environmental product stewardship program	297
Protecting the environment	297
Ozone production	297
Power consumption	297
Paper use	297
Plastics	297
HP LaserJet printing supplies	297
HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program Information	297
Recycled paper	298
Material restrictions	298
Disposal of waste equipment by users in private households in the European Union	299
Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)	299
For more information	299
Declaration of Conformity	300
Safety statements	301
Laser safety	301
Canadian DOC regulations	301
EMI statement (Korea)	301
VCCI statement (Japan)	301
AC cordset statement (Japan)	301
Laser Statement for Finland	302

Glossary	303
----------------	-----

Index.....	307
------------	-----

1 Printer basics

This chapter contains information on setting up your printer and becoming familiar with its features. The following topics are covered:

- [Quick access to printer information](#)
- [Printer configurations](#)
- [Printer features](#)
- [Walk around](#)
- [Printer software](#)
- [Printer drivers](#)
- [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#)
- [Software for Macintosh computers](#)
- [Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh](#)
- [Print media specifications](#)

Quick access to printer information

World Wide Web links

Printer drivers, updated HP printer software, and product information and support may be obtained from the following URLs:

- <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>

Printer drivers may be obtained from the following sites:

- In China: <ftp://www.hp.com.cn/support/clj4700>
- In Japan: <ftp://www.jpn.hp.com/support/clj4700>
- In Korea: <http://www.hp.co.kr/support/clj4700>
- In Taiwan: <http://www.hp.com.tw/support/clj4700>, or the local driver Web site: <http://www.dds.com.tw>

To order supplies:

- United States: <http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies>
- Worldwide: <http://www.hp.com/ghp/buyonline.html>

To order accessories:

- <http://www.hp.com/go/accessories>

User guide links

For the latest version of the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer user guide, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

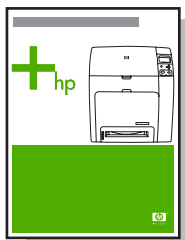
Where to look for more information

Several references are available for use with this printer. See <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Setting up the printer

Start Guide

Provides step-by-step instructions for installing and setting up the printer.



HP Driver Pre-Configuration Guide

For detailed information about configuring printer drivers, go to http://www.hp.com/go/hpdpc_sw.

HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

Information about using the embedded Web server is available on the CD-ROM that came with the printer.



Accessory and Consumable Installation Guides

Provides step-by-step instructions for installing the printer's accessories and consumables. Supplied with the printer's optional accessories and consumables.

Using the printer

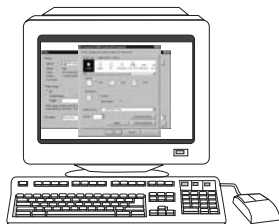
CD-ROM User Guide

Provides detailed information on using and troubleshooting the printer. Available on the CD-ROM included with the printer.



Online Help

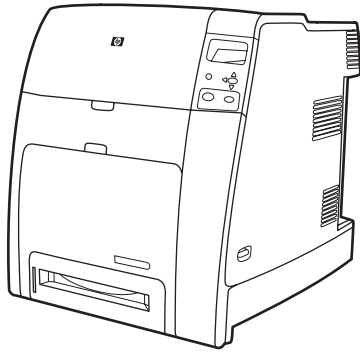
Provides information on printer options that are available from within printer drivers. To view a Help file, access the online Help through the printer driver.



Printer configurations

Thank you for purchasing the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer. This printer is available in the configurations described below.

HP Color LaserJet 4700 (product number Q7491A)



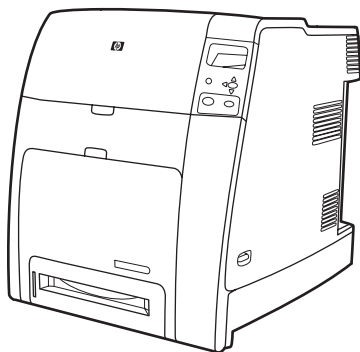
The HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer is a four-color laser printer that prints up to 31 pages per minute (ppm) for letter-sized paper and up to 30 ppm for A4-size paper.

- **Trays.** The printer comes with a multipurpose tray (Tray 1) that holds up to 100 sheets of various print media or 20 envelopes. A standard 500-sheet paper feeder (Tray 2) supports letter, legal, executive, 8.5 x 13, JIS B5, executive (JIS), 16K, A4, and A5, and custom media. The printer can support up to four optional 500-sheet paper feeders (Trays 3, 4, 5, and 6).
- **Connectivity.** The printer provides parallel, network, and auxiliary ports for connectivity. Two enhanced input/output (EIO) slots, wireless connectivity capability with optional print server, auxiliary port, universal serial bus (USB) and accessory connections, and bidirectional parallel cable interface (IEEE-1284-C compliant) are standard.
- **Memory.** 160 megabytes (MB) of memory: 128 MB of dual data-rate (DDR) synchronous dynamic random access memory (SDRAM), 32 MB of memory on the formatter board, and one open dual inline memory module (DIMM) slot.



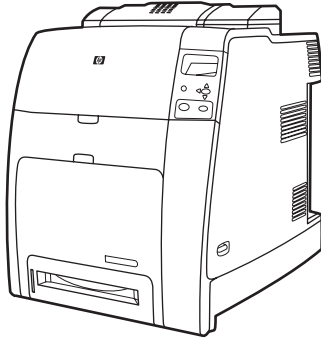
NOTE To allow memory expansion, the printer has an available 200-pin small outline dual inline memory module (SODIMM) slot that accepts 128 or 256 MB RAM. The printer can support up to 544 MB of memory: 512 MB of memory in SODIMMs, plus 32 MB additional memory on the formatter board. An optional hard disk drive is also available.

HP Color LaserJet 4700n (product number Q7492A)



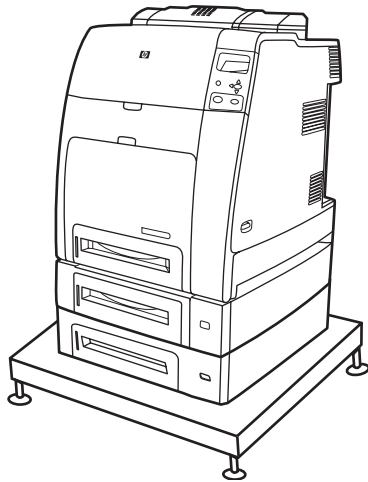
The HP Color LaserJet 4700n printer includes the features of the 4700, plus the HP Jetdirect embedded print server (RJ-45 port) for network connectivity.

HP Color LaserJet 4700dn (product number Q7493A)



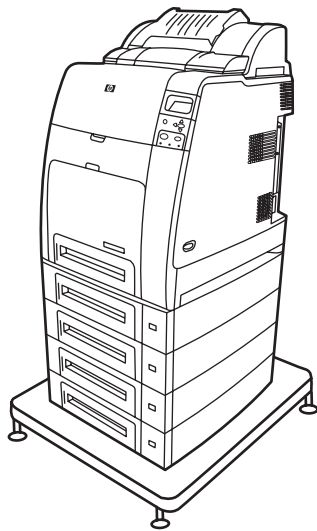
The HP Color LaserJet 4700dn printer includes the features of the 4700n, plus a duplexer for automatic two-sided printing, and an additional 128 MB of memory for a total of 288 MB of memory (256 MB of DDR SDRAM and 32 MB of memory on the formatter board).

HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn (product number Q7494A)



The HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn includes all the features of the 4700dn, two additional 500-sheet paper feeders (Trays 3 and 4), and a printer stand.

HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ (product number Q7495A)



The HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ includes the features of the 4700dtn, two additional 500-sheet paper feeders (Trays 5 and 6), a high-capacity stapler/stacker, a printer stand, a hard disk, and an additional 256 MB of memory.



NOTE 544 MB of SDRAM: 512 MB of DDR, plus 32 MB of additional memory on the formatter board and an additional DIMM slot. This printer has two 200-pin small outline dual inline memory module (SODIMM) slots that accept 128 or 256 MB of RAM each.

Printer features

This printer combines the quality and reliability of Hewlett-Packard printing with the new features and standard capabilities listed below. For more information on printer features, see the Hewlett-Packard Web site at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Table 1-1 Features


Performance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prints up to 31 pages per minute (ppm) for letter-sized paper and up to 30 ppm for A4-sized paper. First page prints in 10 seconds or less from the Ready prompt. The printer can be set to wake from sleep mode at a specific time each day.
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 160 MB of memory for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 and 4700n, 288 MB for the HP Color LaserJet 4700dn and HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn, and 544 MB for the HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+. <div>  <p>NOTE Memory specification: HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers use 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (SODIMM) that support 128 or 256 MB of RAM.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Two open EIO slots. Can be expanded to 544 MB: 512 MB of DDR memory plus 32 MB of memory on the formatter board. Optional hard disk drive can be added via an EIO slot (an internal hard disk drive is included with the HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ printer).
User interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Four-line graphic display on control panel. Enhanced Help with animated graphics. Embedded Web server to access support and order supplies (network-connected printers). HP Easy Printer Care Software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool).
Supported printer personalities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> HP PCL 6. HP PCL 5c. PostScript 3 emulation. Portable document format (PDF).
Job storage features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Full job storage features. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Proof and hold. Private jobs. Quick copy. Mopier mode. Job storage. Personal identification number (PIN) printing. Fonts and forms.

Table 1-1 Features (continued)


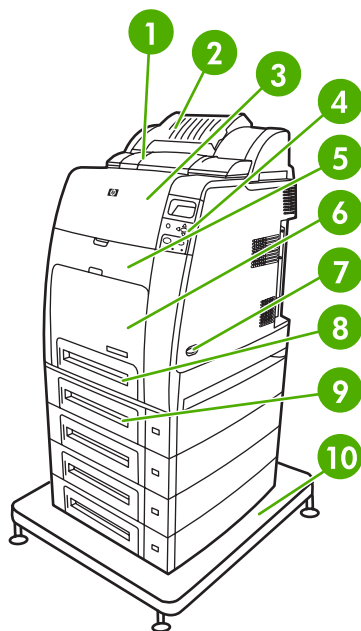
Environmental features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sleep mode setting. • High content of recyclable components and materials. • Energy Star compliant.
Fonts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 80 internal fonts available for both PCL and PostScript emulation. • 80 printer-matching screen fonts in TrueType™ format available with the software solution. • Supports forms and fonts on the disk using HP Web Jetadmin.
Paper handling	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Prints on media from 77 mm x 127 mm (3 inches x 5 inches) up to 216 mm x 356 mm (8.5 inches x 14 inches) (legal size). For ordering information, see Part numbers. • Tray 1 can process heavy media from 60 g/m² to 220 g/m² (16 lb to 60 lb), as well as standard 80 lb cover stock. For ordering information, see Part numbers. • Tray 2 and optional trays can process media from 60 g/m² to 120 g/m² (16 lb to 32 lb). • Prints on a wide range of media types, including HP laser photo media, glossy papers, and transparencies, as well as heavy stock, labels, and envelopes. • Prints multiple gloss levels. • Standard 100-sheet multi-purpose paper tray (Tray 1) supports letter, legal, executive, 8.5 X 13, JIS B5, executive (JIS), 16K, A4, A5, and custom media. • Standard 500-sheet paper feeder (Tray 2) that supports letter, legal, executive, 8.5 X 13, JIS B5, executive (JIS), 16K, A4, A5, and custom media. • Up to four additional 500-sheet paper feeders (Trays 3, 4, 5, and 6) support letter, legal, executive, 8.5 X 13, JIS B5, executive (JIS), 16K, A4, A5, and custom media. • Standard 500-sheet face-down output bin. • Duplexer for automatic two-sided printing (duplexing) standard on the HP Color LaserJet 4700dn, HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn, and HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ printers. • Automatic duplexing of 120 g/m² (32 lb) paper at full speed - 30 sides (15 sheets) per minute. • Stapler/stacker prints up to 750 sheets with job offset and staples up to 30 sheets; standard on the HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+.
Accessories	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Printer hard disk, which provides storage for fonts and macros as well as additional features for Job Storage; standard on HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ printer. • Small outline dual inline memory modules (SODIMMs). • Flash memory slots for additional fonts and firmware upgrades. • Printer stand. • Stapler/stacker; standard on the HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+. <div>  <p>NOTE Optional as an accessory for the HP Color LaserJet 4700dn and HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn. The stapler/stacker can be installed only on printers that are equipped with the automatic duplexer.</p> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to four additional 500-sheet paper feeders (Trays 3, 4, 5, and 6).

Table 1-1 Features (continued)

Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enhanced input/output (EIO) card slots for optional connectivity. (Network connection using an HP Jetdirect embedded print server is standard on HP Color LaserJet 4700n, HP Color LaserJet 4700dn, HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn, and HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ printers.)• USB 2.0 connection.• HP Jetdirect embedded print server to enable network connectivity without requiring use of an EIO slot.• Standard bidirectional parallel cable interface (IEEE 1284-C compliant).• Auxiliary connector.• Both USB and parallel connections are supported, but cannot be used at the same time.
Supplies	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Supplies status page contains information on toner level, page count, and estimated pages remaining.• High-capacity no-shake cartridge with automatic toner seal removal feature.• Printer checks for authentic HP print cartridges at cartridge installation.• High-capacity (5,000) staple cartridge with staples-low and staples-out messaging capability.• Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through the embedded Web server.• Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through the HP Easy Printer Care Software. For more information, see http://www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare.

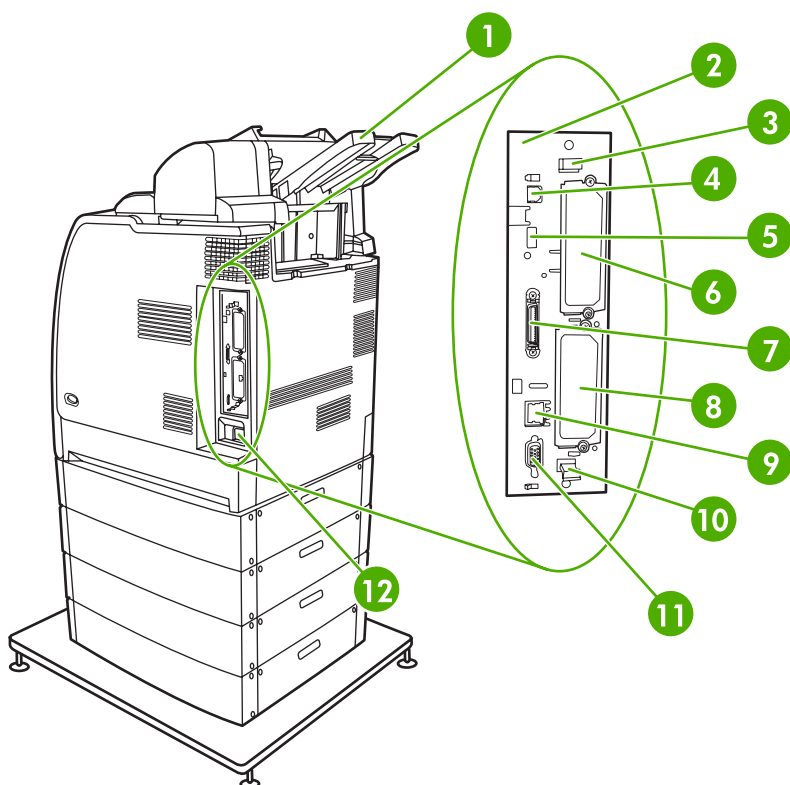
Walk around

The following illustrations identify the locations and names of key components of this printer.



Front view (HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ shown)

1	Duplexer
2	Stapler/stacker
3	Top cover
4	Control panel
5	Front cover (access to print cartridges, transfer unit, and fuser)
6	Tray 1
7	On/off switch
8	Tray 2
9	Optional paper tray (three additional optional paper trays also shown)
10	Printer stand



Back/side view (HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ shown)

1	Output tray
2	Formatter board
3	Upper formatter board tab
4	USB connection
5	ACC connection
6	EIO connection
7	Parallel port
8	EIO connection
9	Network port (RJ-45 connector)
10	Lower formatter board tab
11	Auxiliary port
12	Power cord connection

Printer software

Included with the printer is a CD-ROM containing the printing system software. The software components and printer drivers on this CD-ROM help you use the printer to its fullest potential. See the Getting Started Guide for installation instructions.



NOTE For the latest information about the printing system software components, refer to the readme file on the Web at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>. For information about installing the printer software, view the Install Notes on the CD-ROM included with the printer.

This section summarizes the software included on the CD-ROM. The printing system includes software for end users and network administrators operating in the following operating environments:

- Microsoft Windows 98 and Windows Me
- Microsoft Windows 2000, XP (32-bit), and Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Apple Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2, and Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3



NOTE For a list of the network environments supported by the network administrator software components, see [Network configuration](#).

NOTE For a list of printer drivers, updated HP printer software, and product support information, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Software

Software features

Automatic Configuration, Update Now, and Preconfiguration features are available with the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer.

Driver Autoconfiguration

The HP LaserJet PCL 6 and PCL 5c drivers for Windows and the PS drivers for Windows 2000 and Windows XP feature automatic discovery and driver configuration for printer accessories at the time of installation. Some accessories that Driver Autoconfiguration supports are the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs). If the environment supports bidirectional communication, the installer presents Driver Autoconfiguration as an installable component by default for a Typical Installation and for a Custom Installation.

Update Now

If you have modified the configuration of the HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication. Click the **Update Now** button to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver.



NOTE The Update Now feature is not supported in environments where shared Windows 2000 or Windows XP clients are connected to Windows 2000 or Windows XP hosts.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools that allows HP software to be customized and distributed in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver

Preconfiguration, information technology (IT) administrators can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP printer drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment. For more information, see the *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide*, which is available at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Installing the printing system software

The following sections contain instructions for installing the printing system software.

The printer comes with printing system software and printer drivers on a CD-ROM. The printing system software on the CD-ROM must be installed to take full advantage of the printer features.

If you do not have access to a CD-ROM drive, you can download the printing system software from the Internet at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.



NOTE You can obtain Model Scripts for UNIX® and Linux by downloading them from the Internet or by requesting them from an HP-authorized service or support provider. For Linux support see <http://www.hp.com/go/linux>. For UNIX support see http://www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software.

You can download the latest software free of charge at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Installing Windows printing system software for direct connections

This section explains how to install the printing system software for Microsoft Windows 98, Windows Me, Windows 2000, and Windows XP.

When installing the printing software in a direct-connect environment, always install the software before connecting the parallel or USB cable. If the parallel or USB cable was connected before the software installation, see [Installing the software after the parallel or USB cable has been connected](#).

Either a parallel or USB cable can be used for the direct connection. However, you cannot connect parallel and USB cables at the same time. Use an IEEE 1284-compatible cable or a standard 2-meter USB cable.

Installing the printing system software

1. Close all software programs that are open or running.
2. Insert the printer CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the welcome screen does not open, start it by using the following procedure:

- On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
 - Type the following: X:\setup (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - Click **OK**.
3. When prompted, click **Install Printer** and follow the instructions on the computer screen.
 4. Click **Finish** when the installation has completed.
 5. You might need to restart the computer.
 6. Print a Test Page or a page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the printer CD-ROM or the flyer that came in the printer box, or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for help or more information.

Installing Windows printing system software for networks

The software on the printer CD-ROM supports network installation with a Microsoft network. For network installation on other operating systems, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

The HP Jetdirect embedded print server in the HP Color LaserJet 4700n, HP Color LaserJet 4700dn printer, or HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn printer includes a 10/100 Base-TX network port. For other available HP Jetdirect print servers, see [Supplies and accessories](#) or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

The installer does not support printer installation or printer object creation on Novell servers. It supports only direct-mode network installations between Windows computers and a printer. To install your printer and create objects on a Novell server, use an HP utility (such as HP Web Jetadmin) or a Novell utility (such as NWAdmin).

Installing the printing system software

1. If you are installing the software on Windows 2000 or Windows XP, make sure that you have administrator privileges.
2. Make sure that the HP Jetdirect print server and printer are properly connected to the network. Print a configuration page (see [Printer information pages](#)). On the second page of the configuration page, locate the IP address that is currently configured. You might need this address to initially identify the printer on your network and complete the installation.
3. Close all software programs that are open or running.
4. Insert the printer CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If the welcome screen does not open, start it by using the following procedure:

- On the **Start** menu, click **Run**.
 - Type the following: X:\setup (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive).
 - Click **OK**.
5. When prompted, click **Install Printer** and follow the instructions on the computer screen.
 6. Click **Finish** when installation has completed.
 7. You might need to restart the computer.
 8. Print a Test Page or a page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the printer CD-ROM or the flyer that came in the printer box, or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for help or more information.

Setting up a Windows computer to use the network printer with Windows-sharing

If the computer will print directly to the printer, you can share the printer on the network so that other network users can print to it.

See your Windows documentation to enable Windows-sharing. After the printer is shared, install the printer software on all computers that share the printer.

Installing the software after the parallel or USB cable has been connected

If you have already connected a parallel or USB cable to a Windows computer, the **New Hardware Found** dialog box appears when you turn on the computer.

Installing the software for Windows 98 or Windows Me

1. In the **New Hardware Found** dialog box, click **Search CD-ROM drive**.
2. Click **Next**.
3. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
4. Print a Test Page or a page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the printer CD-ROM or the flyer that came in the printer box, or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for help or more information.

Installing the software for Windows 2000 or Windows XP

1. In the **New Hardware Found** dialog box, click **Search**.
2. On the **Locate Driver Files** screen, select the **Specify a Location** check box, clear all other check boxes, and then click **Next**.
3. Type the letter for the root directory. For example, X:\ (where "X:\" is the letter of the root directory on the CD-ROM drive).
4. Click **Next**.
5. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
6. Click **Finish** when installation has completed.
7. Select a language and follow the instructions on the computer screen.
8. Print a Test Page or a page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, check the installation notes and readme files on the printer CD-ROM or the flyer that came in the printer box, or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for help or more information.

Uninstalling the software

This section explains how to uninstall the printing system software.

Removing software from Windows operating systems

Use the Uninstaller in the HP Color LaserJet 4700/Tools program group to select and remove any or all of the Windows HP printing system components.

1. Click **Start** and then click **Programs**.
2. Point to **HP Color LaserJet 4700** and then click **Tools**.
3. Click **Uninstaller**.
4. Click **Next**.
5. Select the HP printing system components you want to uninstall.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Follow the instructions on the computer screen to complete the uninstallation.

Software for networks

For a summary of available HP network installation and configuration software solutions, see the *HP Jetdirect Print Server Administrator's Guide*. You can find this guide on the CD-ROM included with the printer.

HP Web Jetadmin

HP Web Jetadmin allows you to manage HP Jetdirect-connected printers within your intranet using a Web browser. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool, and should be installed only on a single network administration server. It can be installed and run on these systems:

- Fedora Core and SuSe Linux
- Windows 2000 Professional, Server, and Advanced Server
- Windows XP Professional Service Pack 1
- Windows Server 2003

When installed on a host server, HP Web Jetadmin can be accessed by any client through a supported web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 and 6.0 or Netscape Navigator 7.0.

HP Web Jetadmin has the following features:

- Task-oriented user interface provides configurable views, saving network managers significant time.
- Customizable user profiles let network administrators include only the function viewed or used.
- Instant e-mail notification of hardware failure, low supplies, and other printer problems now route to different people.
- Remote installation and management from anywhere using only a standard Web browser.
- Advanced autodiscovery locates peripherals on the network, without manually entering each printer into a database.
- Simple integration into enterprise management packages.

- Ability to quickly find peripherals based on parameters such as IP address, color capability, and model name.
- Ability to easily organize peripherals into logical groups, with virtual office maps for easy navigation.
- Ability to manage and configure multiple printers at once.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin and to see the latest list of supported host systems, visit HP Customer Care Online at <http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin>.

UNIX

The HP Jetdirect Printer Installer for UNIX is a simple printer installation utility for HP-UX and Solaris networks. It is available for download from HP Customer Care Online at http://www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software.

Utilities

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer is equipped with several utilities, which make it easy to monitor and manage the printer on a network.

HP Easy Printer Care Software

The HP Easy Printer Care Software is a software program that you can use for the following tasks:

- Viewing color usage information
- Checking the printer status
- Checking the supplies status
- Setting up alerts
- Viewing printer documentation
- Gaining access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools

You can view the HP Easy Printer Care Software when the printer is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network. Perform a complete software installation in order to use the HP Easy Printer Care Software. For more information, see <http://www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare>.

Embedded Web server

This printer is equipped with an embedded Web server, which allows access to information about printer and network activities. A Web server provides an environment in which web programs may run, much in the same way that an operating system, such as Windows, provides an environment for programs to run on your computer. The output from these programs can then be displayed by a Web browser, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape Navigator.

When a Web server is "embedded", that means it resides on a hardware device (such as a printer) or in firmware, rather than as software that is loaded on a network server.

The advantage of an embedded Web server is that it provides an interface to the printer that anyone can access with a network-connected computer or a standard Web browser. There is no special software to install or configure. For more information about the HP embedded Web server, see the *Embedded Web Server User Guide*. You can find this guide on the CD-ROM included with the printer.

Features

The HP embedded Web server allows you to view printer and network card status and manage printing functions from your computer. With the HP embedded Web server, you can do the following:

- View printer status information.
- Determine the remaining life on all supplies and order new ones.
- View and change tray configurations.
- View and change the printer control panel menu configuration.
- View and print internal pages.
- Receive notification of printer and supplies events.
- Add or customize links to other Web sites.
- Select the language in which to display the embedded Web server pages.
- View and change network configuration.

For a complete explanation of the features and functionality of the embedded Web server, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

Other components and utilities

Several software applications are available for Windows and Mac OS users, as well as for network administrators.

Windows	Mac OS	Network administrator
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Software installer — automates the printing system installation• Online Web registration	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PostScript Printer Description files (PPDs) — for use with the Apple PostScript drivers that comes with the Mac OS• HP LaserJet Utility (available from the Internet) — a printer management utility for Mac OS users	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• HP Web Jetadmin — a browser-based system management tool. See http://www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin for the latest HP Web Jetadmin software• HP Jetdirect Printer Installer for UNIX — available for download from http://www.hp.com/support/net_printing

Printer drivers

The product comes with software that allows the computer to communicate with the product (by using a printer language). This software is called a printer driver. Printer drivers provide access to product features, such as printing on custom-sized paper, resizing documents, and inserting watermarks.

Supported printer drivers

The following printer drivers are provided for the product. If the printer driver that you want is not on the product CD-ROM or is not available on www.hp.com, contact the manufacturer or distributor of the program that you are using, and request a driver for the product.



NOTE The most recent drivers are available at www.hp.com. Depending on the configuration of Windows-based computers, the installation program for the product software automatically checks the computer for Internet access in order to obtain the latest drivers.

NOTE For Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003, the HP Color LaserJet 4700 Series printers include a monochrome PCL 6 driver that can be installed for users who will be printing only black-and-white print jobs.

Operating system ¹	PCL 6 printer driver ²	PCL 5 printer driver	PS printer driver	PPD ³ printer driver
Microsoft Windows 98	X	X	X	
Windows Millennium (Me)	X	X	X	
Windows 2000	X	X	X	
Windows XP	X	X	X	
Windows Server 2003	X	X	X	
Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2			X	X
Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3			X	X

¹ Not all product features are available from all drivers or operating systems. See the context-sensitive help in the printer driver for available features.

² For Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003, the HP Color LaserJet 4700 Series printers include a monochrome PCL 6 driver that can be installed for users who will be printing only black-and-white print jobs.

³ PostScript (PS) Printer Description files (PPDs)

Additional drivers

The following drivers are not included on the CD-ROM, but are available from the Internet.

- OS/2 PCL printer driver
- OS/2 PS printer driver.
- UNIX model scripts.
- Linux drivers.
- HP OpenVMS drivers.



NOTE The OS/2 drivers are available from IBM.

You can obtain Model Scripts for UNIX® and Linux by downloading them from the Internet or by requesting them from an HP-authorized service or support provider. For Linux support see www.hp.com/go/linux. For UNIX support see www.hp.com/go/jetdirectunix_software.

Select the correct printer driver

Select a printer driver based on the operating system that you are using and the way that you use the product. See the printer-driver Help for the features that are available. For information about gaining access to the printer-driver Help, see Printer-driver Help.

- The PCL 6 printer driver can provide the best overall performance and access to your printer features.
- The PCL 5 printer driver is recommended for general office monochrome and color printing.
- Use the PostScript (PS) driver if you are printing primarily from PostScript-based programs such as Adobe PhotoShop® and CorelDRAW®, for compatibility with PostScript Level 3 needs, or for PS flash font support.



NOTE The product automatically switches between PS and PCL printer languages.

Printer-driver Help (Windows)

Printer-driver Help is separate from program Help. The printer-driver help provides explanations for the buttons, checkboxes, and drop-down lists that are in the printer driver. It also includes instructions for performing common printing tasks, such as printing on both sides, printing multiple pages on one sheet, and printing the first page or covers on different paper.

Activate the printer-driver Help screens in one of the following ways:

- Click the **Help** button.
- Press the **F1** key on the computer keyboard.
- Click the question-mark symbol in the upper-right corner of the printer driver.
- Right-click on any item in the driver, and then click **What's This?**.

Gaining access to the printer drivers

Use one of the following methods to open the printer drivers from your computer:

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the print job default settings (for example, turn on Print on Both Sides by default)	To change the configuration settings (for example, add a tray or enable/disable Manual Duplexing)
Windows 98 and Windows Millennium (Me)	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. On the File menu in the software program, click Print.2. Select the HP Color LaserJet 4700, and then click Properties. <p>The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.2. Right-click the HP Color LaserJet 4700 icon, and then select Properties (Windows 98 and Me) or Document Defaults (Windows NT 4.0).	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.2. Right-click the HP Color LaserJet 4700 icon, and then select Properties.3. Click the Configure tab.

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the print job default settings (for example, turn on Print on Both Sides by default)	To change the configuration settings (for example, add a tray or enable/disable Manual Duplexing)
Windows 2000, XP, and Server 2003	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu in the software program, click Print. Select the HP Color LaserJet 4700, and then click Properties or Preferences. <p>The steps can vary; this procedure is most common.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers or Printers and Faxes. Right-click the HP Color LaserJet 4700 icon, and then select Printing Preferences. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers or Printers and Faxes. Right-click the HP Color LaserJet 4700 icon, and then select Properties. Click the Device Settings tab.
Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. As you change settings on the pop-up menu, click Save Settings. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the desktop printer icon. From the Printing menu, click Change Setup.
Mac OS X v10.2.8	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus. On the Presets pop-up menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. <p>These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Finder, on the Go menu, click Applications. Open Utilities, and then open Print Center. Click on the print queue. On the Printers menu, click Show Info. Click the Installable Options menu. <div>  <p>NOTE Configuration settings might not be available in Classic mode.</p> </div>
Mac OS X v10.3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> On the File menu, click Print. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus. On the Presets pop-up menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. <p>These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Open Printer Setup Utility by selecting the hard drive, clicking Applications, clicking Utilities, then double-clicking Printer Setup Utility. Click on the print queue. On the Printers menu, click Show Info. Click the Installable Options menu.

Printer drivers for Macintosh computers

The printer comes with printer-driver software that uses a printer language to communicate with the printer. Printer drivers provide access to printer features, such as printing on custom-sized paper, resizing documents, and inserting watermarks.

Supported printer drivers

A Macintosh printer driver and the necessary PPD files are included with the printer. If the printer driver that you want is not on the printer CD, check the installation notes and the late-breaking readme files to see if the printer driver is supported. If it is not supported, contact the manufacturer or distributor of the software program that you are using, and request a driver for the printer.




NOTE The most recent drivers are available at www.hp.com.

Gaining access to the printer drivers

Use one of the following methods to open the printer drivers from your computer.

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the print job default settings (for example, turn on Print on Both Sides by default)	To change the configuration settings (for example, add a physical option such as a tray, or turn on or off a driver feature such as Allow Manual Duplexing)
Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. On the File menu, click Print.2. Change any settings that you want to on the various pop-up menus.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. On the File menu, click Print.2. As you change settings on the pop-up menu, click Save Settings.	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Click the desktop printer icon.2. From the Printing menu, click Change Setup.

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the print job default settings (for example, turn on Print on Both Sides by default)	To change the configuration settings (for example, add a physical option such as a tray, or turn on or off a driver feature such as Allow Manual Duplexing)
Mac OS X v10.2.8	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change any settings that you want to on the various pop-up menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus, and then, on the Presets pop-up menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. <p>These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Finder, on the Go menu, click Applications. 2. Open Utilities, and then open Print Center. 3. Click on the print queue. 4. On the Printers menu, click Show Info. 5. Click the Installable Options menu. <div>  <p>NOTE Configuration settings might not be available in Classic mode.</p> </div>
Mac OS X v10.3	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change any settings that you want to on the various pop-up menus. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the File menu, click Print. 2. Change the settings that you want on the various pop-up menus, and then, on the Presets pop-up menu, click Save as and type a name for the preset. <p>These settings are saved in the Presets menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time you open a program and print.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open Printer Setup Utility by selecting the hard drive, clicking Applications, clicking Utilities, and then double-clicking Printer Setup Utility. 2. Click on the print queue. 3. On the Printers menu, click Show Info. 4. Click the Installable Options menu.

Software for Macintosh computers

The HP installer provides PostScript® Printer Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP Printer Utility for use with Macintosh computers.

If both the printer and the Macintosh computer are connected to a network, use the printer embedded Web server (EWS) to configure the printer. For more information, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

Installing Macintosh printing system software for networks

This section describes how to install Macintosh printing system software. The printing system software supports Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2, and Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3.

The printing system software includes the following components:

- **PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files**

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple PostScript printer drivers, provide access to printer features. An installation program for the PPDs and other software is provided on the compact disc (CD) that came with the printer. Use the Apple PostScript printer driver that comes with the computer.

- **HP Printer Utility**

The HP Printer Utility provides access to features that are not available in the printer driver. Use the illustrated screens to select printer features and complete the following tasks with the printer:

- Name the printer.
- Assign the printer to a zone on the network.
- Assign an internet protocol (IP) address to the printer.
- Download files and fonts.
- Configure and set the printer for IP or AppleTalk printing.

You can use the HP Printer Utility when your printer uses a universal serial bus (USB) or is connected to a TCP/IP-based network.



NOTE The HP Printer Utility is supported for Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3.

For more information about using the HP Printer Utility, see [Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh](#).

To install printer drivers for Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2

1. Connect the network cable between the HP Jetdirect print server and a network port.
2. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive. The CD menu runs automatically. If the CD menu does not run automatically, double-click the CD icon on the desktop.
3. Double-click the **Installer** icon in the HP LaserJet Installer folder.
4. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
5. On the computer hard drive, open **Applications**, open **Utilities**, and then open **Desktop Printer Utility**.

6. Double-click **Printer (AppleTalk)**.
7. Next to **AppleTalk Printer Selection**, click **Change**.
8. Select the printer, click **Auto Setup**, and then click **Create**.



NOTE The icon on the desktop looks generic. All of the print panels appear in the print dialog box with each software program.

To install printer drivers for Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3

1. Connect the network cable between the HP Jetdirect print server and a network port.
2. Insert the CD into the CD-ROM drive.

The CD menu runs automatically. If the CD menu does not run automatically, double-click the CD icon on the desktop.

3. Double-click the **Installer** icon in the HP LaserJet Installer folder.
4. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
5. On the computer hard drive, open **Applications**, open **Utilities**, and then open **Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.



NOTE If you are using Mac OS X v10.3, then the **Printer Setup Utility** has replaced the **Print Center**.

6. Click **Add Printer**.
7. Select **Rendezvous** as the connection type.
8. Select your printer from the list.
9. Click **Add Printer**.
10. Close the Print Center or the Printer Setup Utility by clicking the close button in the upper-left corner.

Installing Macintosh printing system software for direct connections (USB)



NOTE Macintosh computers do *not* support parallel port connections.

This section explains how to install the printing system software for Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2, and Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3.

The Apple PostScript driver must be installed in order to use the PPD files. Use the Apple PostScript driver that came with your Macintosh computer.

To install the printing system software

1. Connect a USB cable between the USB port on the printer and the USB port on the computer. Use a standard 2-meter (6.56-foot) USB cable.
2. Insert the printer CD into the CD-ROM drive and run the installer.

The CD menu runs automatically. If the CD menu does not run automatically, double-click the CD icon on the desktop.
3. Double-click the **Installer** icon in the HP LaserJet Installer folder.
4. Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
5. For Mac OS 9.1 and 9.2:
 - a. On the computer hard drive, open **Applications**, open **Utilities**, and then open **Print Center**.
 - b. Double-click **Printer (USB)**, and then click **OK**.
 - c. Next to **USB Printer Selection**, click **Change**.
 - d. Select the printer, and then click **OK**.
 - e. Next to **Postscript Printer Description (PPD) File**, click **Auto Setup**, and then click **Create**.
 - f. On the **Printing** menu, click **Set Default Printer**.

For Mac OS X v10.2.8 and v10.3: USB queues are created automatically when the printer is attached to the computer. However, the queue will use a generic PPD if the installer has not been run before the USB cable is connected. To change the queue PPD, open the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility, select the correct printer queue, and then click **Show Info** to open the **Printer Info** dialog box. In the pop-up menu, select **Printer Model**, and then, in the pop-up menu in which **Generic** is selected, select the correct PPD for the printer.

6. Print a test page or a page from any software program to make sure that the software is correctly installed.

If installation fails, reinstall the software. If this fails, see the installation notes or late-breaking readme files on the printer CD or the flyer that came in the printer box, or go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for help or more information.



NOTE The icon on the Mac OS 9.x desktop looks generic. All of the print panels appear in the Print dialog box with each software program.

To remove software from Macintosh operating systems

To remove the software from a Macintosh computer, drag the PPD files to the trash can.

Using the HP Printer Utility for Macintosh

Use the HP Printer Utility to configure and maintain a printer from a Mac OS X v10.2.8 or v10.3 computer. This section describes several functions that you can perform through the HP Printer Utility.

Opening the HP Printer Utility

The process that you use to start the HP Printer Utility depends on the Macintosh operating system that you are using.

To open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X v10.2.8

1. Open the Finder, and then click **Applications**.
2. Click **Library**, and then click **Printers**.
3. Click **hp**, and then click **Utilities**.
4. Double-click **HP Printer Selector** to open the HP Printer Selector.
5. Select the printer that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

To open the HP Printer Utility in Mac OS X v10.3

1. In the Dock, click the **Printer Setup Utility** icon.



NOTE If the **Printer Setup Utility** icon does not appear in the Dock, open the Finder, click **Applications**, click **Utilities**, and then double-click **Printer Setup Utility**.

2. Select the printer that you want to configure, and then click **Utility**.

Printing a cleaning page

Print a cleaning page if the printer is not printing jobs at the expected quality level.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Color Cleaning**.
3. Click **Print Cleaning Page** to print the cleaning page.

Printing a configuration page

Print a configuration page to view the printer settings. For more information about the configuration page, see [Configuration page](#).

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Configuration Page**.
3. Click **Print Configuration Page** to print the configuration page.

Viewing supplies status

View the status of the printer supplies (such as print cartridges, imaging drum, or print media) from a computer.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Supplies Status**.
3. Click the **Supplies** tab to view the status of various replaceable supplies, and click the **Media** tab to view the status of print media.
 - To view a more detailed status list, click **Detailed Supplies Information**. The Supplies Information dialog box appears.
 - To order supplies online, click **Order HP Supplies**. You must have Internet access in order to use the online ordering Web page. For more information about online ordering, see [Ordering supplies online and using other support features](#).

Ordering supplies online and using other support features

Use the HP Web site to order printer supplies, register the printer, get customer support, or learn about recycling printer supplies. You must have Internet access in order to use the supplies and support Web pages.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **HP Support**.
3. Click one of the following buttons:
 - **Instant Support**: Opens a Web page that you can use to seek technical assistance.
 - **Order Supplies Online**: Opens a Web page that you can use to order printer supplies.
 - **Online Registration**: Opens a Web page that you can use to register the printer.
 - **Return & Recycle**: Opens a Web page that you can use to find information about recycling used supplies.

Uploading a file to the printer

Send a file from the computer to the printer. The action that the printer takes depends on the type of file that you send to it. For example, when you send a print-ready file (such as a .PS or .PCL file), the printer prints the file.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **File Upload**.
3. Click **Choose**, navigate to the file that you want to upload, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Upload** to load the file.

Uploading fonts to the printer

Add fonts from the computer to the printer.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Upload Fonts**.
3. In the **Fonts in printer's** pop-up menu, select where you want the fonts to be stored on the printer. The fonts in that storage device appear in the list that appears below the pop-up menu.
4. Click **Add** and navigate to the font file that you want to upload to the printer.
5. Click **Upload** to upload the font to the printer.



NOTE To remove a font from the printer, open the HP Printer Utility, select **Upload Fonts**, select the correct storage device in the pop-up menu, select the font that you want to delete, and then click **Remove**.

Updating the firmware

Update the printer firmware by loading the new firmware file from the computer. You can find new firmware files for your printer at www.hp.com.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Firmware Update**.
3. Click **Choose**, navigate to the firmware file that you want to upload, and then click **OK**.
4. Click **Upload** to load the firmware file.

Activating the two-sided printing (duplexing) mode

Turn on the two-sided printing feature on printers equipped with automatic duplexers.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Duplex Mode**.
3. Select **Enable Duplex Mode** to activate the two-sided printing mode, and then click **Apply Now**.

Activating the Economode printing mode

Use the Economode setting to conserve printer supplies.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Economode Toner Density**.
3. Select **Turn Economode on**, and then click **Apply Now**.

Changing the toner density

Conserve print-cartridge toner by changing the toner-density level. The lower toner-density levels conserve the most toner.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Economode Toner Density**.
3. On the **Toner Density** popup menu, select the toner density level, and then click **Apply Now**.

Changing the resolution settings

Change the resolution settings from the computer. You also can change the Resolution Enhancement Technology (REt) setting.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Resolution**.
3. On the **Resolution** pop-up menu, select the resolution level, and then click **Apply Now**.



NOTE To change the REt setting, repeat step 3 in the **REt Level** pop-up menu.

Locking or unlocking printer storage devices

Manage access to printer storage devices from the computer.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Lock Resources**.
3. On the **Control Panel Access Level** pop-up menu, select the access level that you want to set for the printer control panel.
4. Select the devices that you want to lock, and clear any devices that you want to unlock.
5. Click **Apply Now**.

Saving or printing stored jobs

Turn on the printer job-storing function, or print a stored job from the computer. You also can delete a stored print job.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Stored Jobs**.
3. Perform any of the following tasks:
 - To turn on the job-storing function, select **Enable Job Storing**, and then click **Apply Now**.
 - To print a stored job, select a stored job in the list, type the necessary personal identification number (PIN) in the **Enter Secure Job PIN** box, type the number of copies that you want in the **Copies to Print** box, and then click **Print**.
 - To delete a stored job, select a stored job in the list, and then click **Delete**.

Configuring trays

Change the default printer tray settings from the computer.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Trays Configuration**.
3. In the **Trays** list, select the tray to be configured.



NOTE To make the selected tray the default tray for printing, click **Make Default**.

4. In the **Default Media Size** pop-up menu, select the default media size for the tray.
5. In the **Default Media Type** pop-up menu, select the default media type for the tray.
6. Click **Apply Now**.

Changing network settings

Change the network internet protocol (IP) settings from the computer. You also can open the embedded Web server to change additional settings. For more information about the embedded Web server, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **IP Settings**.
3. Change any of the settings in the following pop-up menus or fields:
 - **Configuration**
 - **Host Name**
 - **IP Address**
 - **Subnet Mask**
 - **Default Gateway**

If you want to change more settings in the embedded Web server, click **Additional Network Settings**. The embedded Web server opens with the **Networking** tab selected.

4. Click **Apply Now**.

Opening the embedded Web server

Open the embedded Web server through the HP Printer Utility. For more information about the embedded Web server, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **Additional Settings**.
3. Click **Open Embedded Web Server**.

Setting up e-mail alerts

Set up e-mail messages that alert you to certain events that occur with the printer, such as a low toner level in a print cartridge.

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. In the **Configuration Settings** list, select **E-mail Alerts**.
3. Click the **Server** tab, and, in the **SMTP server** box, type the server name.
4. Click the **Destinations** tab, click the add (+) button, and then type the e-mail addresses, mobile device numbers, or Web site URLs to which you want the e-mail alerts sent.



NOTE If your printer supports e-mail lists, you can make alerts lists for specific events the same way that you added e-mail addresses.

5. Click the **Events** tab, and, in the list, define the events for which an e-mail alert should be sent.
6. To test the alerts setup, click the **Server** tab, and then click **Test**. A sample message is sent to the defined e-mail addresses if the configuration is correct.
7. Click **Apply Now**.

Print media specifications

For optimum results, use conventional 75 g/m² (20 lb) photocopy paper. Verify that the paper is of good quality and is free of cuts, nicks, tears, spots, loose particles, dust, wrinkles, curls, or bent edges.

- To order supplies in the U.S., go to <http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies>.
- To order supplies worldwide, go to <http://www.hp.com/ghp/buyonline.html>.
- To order accessories, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/accessories>.



NOTE Test any media, particularly custom media, before purchasing large quantities to ensure that it will perform satisfactorily.

Supported media weights and sizes



Table 1-2 Tray 1 media sizes

Tray 1	Dimensions	Weight or thickness	Capacity
Paper and cardstock, standard sizes (letter/A4, legal, executive, JIS B5, A5); custom sizes	Range: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (60 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in) Equivalent to 100 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond
Glossy paper (letter/A4, legal, executive, JIS B5, A5)	Range: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 220 g/m ² (60 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.			
Transparencies (letter/A4), suitable for use in laser printers	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	Minimum 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)
HP Tough paper (letter/A4)	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)
HP Color Laser Glossy Photo Paper (letter/A4)	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	220 g/m ² (60 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.			
Envelopes (Com 10, Monarch, C5, DL, B5)		Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 90 g/m ² (24 lb) bond	20 envelopes
Labels (letter/A4, legal, executive, JIS B5, A5),	Range: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Maximum 0.23 mm (0.009 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 10 mm (0.6 in)

Table 1-2 Tray 1 media sizes (continued)

Tray 1	Dimensions	Weight or thickness	Capacity
suitable for use in laser printers			

Table 1-3 Tray 2 and optional Trays 3 through 6 media sizes¹

Tray 2 and optional trays	Dimensions	Weight or thickness	Capacity
Paper, standard sizes (letter/A4, legal, executive, JIS B5, A5); custom sizes	Range: 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in) Equivalent to 530 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond
Glossy paper (letter/A4, legal, executive, JIS B5, A5)	Range: 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in)
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.			
HP Color Laser Glossy Photo & Imaging Paper (letter/A4)	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in)
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.			
Transparencies (letter/A4), suitable for use in laser printers	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	Minimum: 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in)
HP Tough Paper (letter/A4)	Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in) A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	Maximum: 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in)
Labels (letter/A4 and custom sizes), suitable for use in laser printers	Range: 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	Maximum: 0.13 mm (0.005 in) thick	Maximum stack height: 56 mm (2.2 in)

¹ Tray 2 and optional trays use custom sizes specifically for B5 ISO. These trays do not support the range of custom sizes that can be used in Tray 1.

Table 1-4 Automatic duplex printing (two-sided printing)

Automatic duplex printing	Dimensions	Weight or thickness
Paper	Standard sizes: Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	Range: 60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond

Table 1-4 Automatic duplex printing (two-sided printing) (continued)



Automatic duplex printing	Dimensions	Weight or thickness
	A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	
	8.5 x 13: 215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in)	
	Legal: 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	
	Executive: 184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in)	
	JIS B5: 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 in)	
Glossy paper (A4/letter, 13 x 8.5 in, legal, executive, JIS B5)	See above for standard sizes supported	Range: 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.		
HP Color Laser Glossy Photo & Imaging Paper (A4/letter)	Standard sizes: Letter: 215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in)	120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond
 NOTE Do not use inkjet papers in this printer.	A4: 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in)	

Table 1-5 Stapler/stacker








Stapler/stacker	Dimensions	Weight or thickness	Capacity
Stacking with offset	Printing from Tray 1:	Range:	 NOTE The stapler/stacker bin has a capacity of 750 sheets of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond.
 NOTE Media types: paper and cardstock, glossy paper, transparencies, photo paper	76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	60 g/m ² (16 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond	
	Printing from Tray 2 and optional trays:		
	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) 216 x 356 mm to (8.5 x 14 in)		
Stacking without offset	Printing from Tray 1:	Range:	
 NOTE See above for supported media types.	76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)	75 g/m ² (20 lb) bond to 120 g/m ² (32 lb) bond	
	Printing from Tray 2 and optional trays:		
	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 in)		

Table 1-5 Stapler/stacker (continued)

Stapler/stacker	Dimensions	Weight or thickness	Capacity
<p>Stapling (30 sheets)</p> <div>  </div> <p>NOTE Media types: paper and cardstock, glossy paper, transparencies, photo paper</p>	<div>  </div> <p>NOTE See above for supported trays and media sizes.</p>	<p>60 g/m² (16 lb) to 160 g/m² (43 lb)</p>	
<p>Stapling (20 sheets)</p> <div>  </div> <p>NOTE See above for supported media types.</p>	<div>  </div> <p>NOTE See above for supported trays and media sizes.</p>		

2 Control panel

This chapter contains information on the printer control panel, which provides control of printer functions and communicates information about the printer and print jobs. The following topics are covered:

- [Introduction](#)
- [Control panel buttons](#)
- [Interpreting control panel indicator lights](#)
- [Interpreting stapler/stacker indicator light codes](#)
- [Control panel menus](#)
- [Menu hierarchy](#)
- [Retrieve job menu](#)
- [Information menu](#)
- [Paper handling menu](#)
- [Configure device menu](#)
- [Diagnostics menu](#)
- [Changing printer control panel configuration settings](#)
- [Using the printer control panel in shared environments](#)

Introduction

The control panel provides control of printer functions and communicates information about the printer and print jobs. Its display provides graphic information about printer and supplies status, making it easy to identify and correct problems.

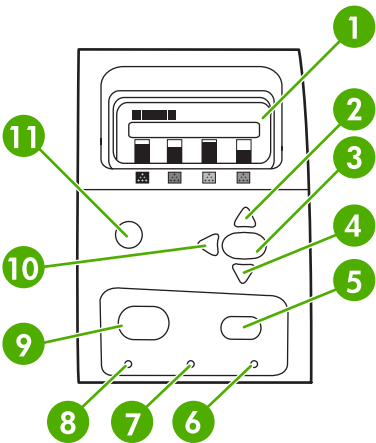


Figure 2-1 Control panel buttons and lights

1	Display
2	Up arrow (▲) button
3	Select (✓) button
4	Down arrow (▼) button
5	Stop button
6	Attention light
7	Data light
8	Ready light
9	Menu button
10	Back/Exit (↵) button
11	Help (?) button

The printer communicates via the display and the lights on the lower left side of the control panel. The **Ready**, **Data**, and **Attention** lights provide at-a-glance information about the state of the printer and alert you to printing problems. The display shows more complete status information as well as menus, help information, animations, and error messages.

Display

The four-line control panel display gives you complete, timely information about the printer and print jobs. Graphics illustrate levels of supplies, the locations of paper jams, and job status. Menus give access to printer functions and detailed status information.

The top-level screen on the display has two areas:

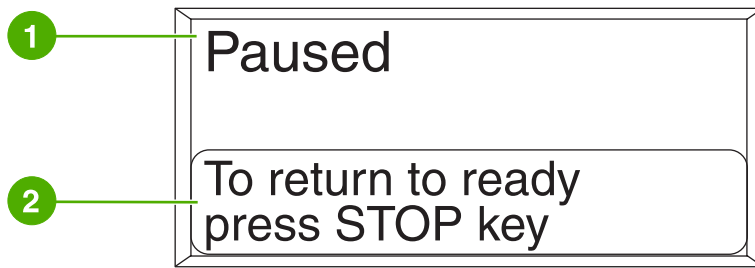


Figure 2-2 Printer display

1	Message area
2	Prompt area

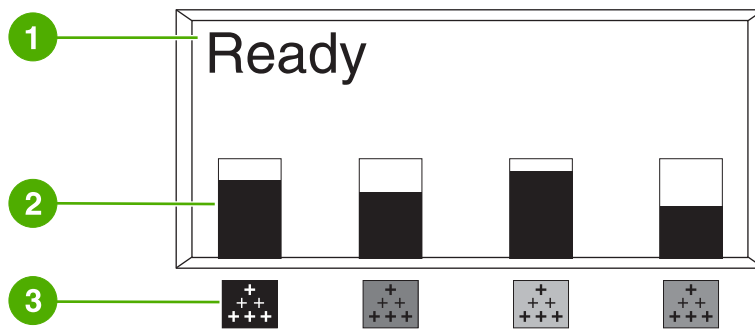


Figure 2-3 Printer display

1	Message area
2	Supplies gauge
3	Print cartridge colors are indicated from left to right: black, magenta, cyan, and yellow

The message and prompt areas of the display alert you to the state of the printer and tell you how to respond.

The supplies gauge shows the consumption levels of print cartridges (black, magenta, cyan, and yellow). A ? appears instead of the consumption level when the level is not known. This can occur in the following circumstances:

- Missing cartridges
- Incorrectly placed cartridges
- Cartridges with an error
- Some non-HP cartridges

The supplies gauge appears whenever the printer shows the **Ready** state with no warnings. It will also appear when the printer shows a warning or error message concerning a print cartridge or multiple supplies.

Accessing the control panel from a computer

You can also access the printer control panel from a computer by using the Settings page of the embedded Web server.

The computer shows the same information that the control panel shows. From your computer, you can also perform control panel functions such as checking supplies status, viewing messages, or changing tray configuration. For more information, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

Control panel buttons

Use the buttons on the control panel to perform printer functions and to navigate and respond to menus and messages in the display.

Button name	Function
✓ Select	Makes selections and resumes printing after recovery errors.
▲ Up arrow	Navigates menus and text, and increases or decreases the values of numerical items in the display.
▼ Down arrow	
↩ Back/exit arrow	Navigates backward in nested menus, or quits menus or help.
Menu	Accesses and exits the menus.
Stop	Pauses the current job and provides options to resume printing or to cancel the current job.
? Help	Provides animated graphics and detailed information on printer messages or menus.

Interpreting control panel indicator lights

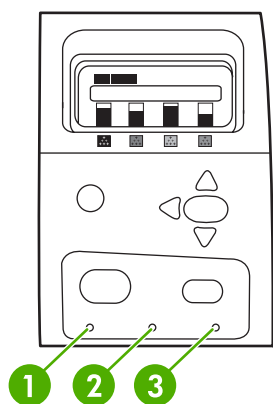


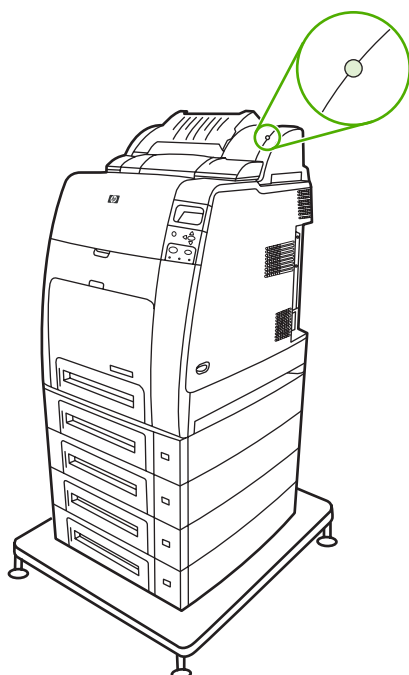
Figure 2-4 Control panel indicator lights

1	Ready
2	Data
3	Attention

Indicator	On	Off	Flashing
Ready (green)	Printer is online (able to accept and process data).	Printer is offline or is turned off.	Printer is attempting to stop printing and go offline.
Data (green)	Processed data is present in the printer, but more data is needed to complete the job.	Printer is not processing or receiving data.	Printer is processing and receiving data.
Attention (amber)	A critical error has occurred. Printer requires attention.	No conditions exist that require attention.	An error has occurred. Printer requires attention.

Interpreting stapler/stacker indicator light codes

The following table lists errors that can occur in the stapler/stacker unit that are reported by the accessory light and on the printer control panel display.



Indicator	Solid	Blinking	Off
Green	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessory is ready and is functioning properly. Fewer than 20 staples remain in the stapler cartridge. STAPLER LOW ON STAPLES appears on the printer control panel display. Order and replace the stapler cartridge. The number of pages in the job exceeds the 30-page limit for stapling. TOO MANY PAGES IN JOB TO STAPLE appears on the printer control panel display. For jobs larger than 30 pages, staple the pages manually. The job contains different paper sizes. The stapler cannot align the paper for stapling. If stapling is required, print the job on same-size 	N/A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The stapler/stacker is in sleep mode, the printer is turned off, or the stapler/stacker is not installed properly.



NOTE The indicator light shows solid green during some continuable errors.

Indicator	Solid	Blinking	Off
	<p>paper, or staple the job manually. MIXED PAPER SIZES IN JOB TO STAPLE appears on the printer control panel display.</p>		
Amber	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The accessory is experiencing a hardware malfunction. <p>For more information, see Control panel messages.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The device requires user intervention. The bin could be full, there could be a stapler jam, or the stapler cartridge could require replacement. For more information, see Control panel messages. <p>If the message CORRUPT FIRMWARE IN EXTERNAL ACCESSORY appears, download the firmware again.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> There is a paper jam, or a sheet needs to be removed from the unit, even if the sheet is not jammed. For more information, see Jams in the stapler/stacker. The bin is full. Empty the bin before continuing. There are fewer than 30 staples remaining in the stapler cartridge. To avoid jams, these staples should not be used. Order and install a new stapler cartridge before continuing. The bin is in the up position. Lower the bin before continuing. The jam access door is open. Close the door before continuing. The stapler unit is open. Close the unit before continuing. 	N/A

Control panel menus

You can perform most routine printing tasks from the computer through the printer driver or software application. This is the most convenient way to control the printer, and will override the printer control panel settings. See the help files associated with the software, or for more information on accessing the printer driver, see [Printer software](#).

You can also control the printer by changing settings in the printer's control panel. Use the control panel to access printer features not supported by the printer driver or software application. Use the control panel to configure trays for paper size and type.

Getting started basics

- Enter the menus and activate any selection by pressing the **Menu** button.
- Use the Up or Down arrows (▲▼) to navigate through the menus. In addition to menu navigation, the Up and Down arrows can increase and decrease numerical value selections. Hold down the Up or Down arrows to scroll faster.
- The Back button (↵) allows you to move back in menu selections as well as select numerical values when configuring the printer.
- Exit all menus by pressing **Menu**.
- If no key is pressed for 60 seconds, the printer will return to the **Ready** state.
- A lock symbol next to a menu item means a PIN number is needed to use that item. Typically, this number is obtained from your network administrator.

Menu hierarchy

The following tables list the hierarchies of each menu.

To enter the menus

Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.

Press **▲** or **▼** to navigate the listings.

Press **✓** to select the appropriate option.

MENUS	RETRIEVE JOB
	INFORMATION
	PAPER HANDLING
	CONFIGURE DEVICE
	DIAGNOSTICS
	SERVICE

Retrieve job menu

See [Retrieve job menu](#) for more information.

RETRIEVE JOB	PRINT STORED JOB LIST
	USER NAME
	ALL PRIVATE JOBS
	PRINT
	COPIES
	DELETE

Information menu

See [Information menu](#) for more information.

INFORMATION	PRINT MENU MAP
	PRINT CONFIGURATION
	PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE
	SUPPLIES STATUS
	PRINT USAGE PAGE
	PRINT DEMO
	PRINT RGB SAMPLES

PRINT CMYK SAMPLES
PRINT FILE DIRECTORY
PRINT PCL FONT LIST
PRINT PS FONT LIST

Paper handling menu

See [Paper handling menu](#) for more information.

PAPER HANDLING	TRAY 1 SIZE
	TRAY 1 TYPE
	TRAY <N> SIZE
	N = 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6
	TRAY <N> TYPE
	N = 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6

Configure device menu

See [Configure device menu](#) and [Changing printer control panel configuration settings](#) for more information.

CONFIGURE DEVICE	PRINTING	COPIES
		DEFAULT PAPER SIZE
		DEFAULT CUSTOM PAPER SIZE
		DUPLEX
		DUPLEX BINDING
		OVERRIDE A4/LETTER
		MANUAL FEED
		COURIER FONT
		WIDE A4
		PRINT PS ERRORS
		PRINT PDF ERRORS
		PCL
	PRINT QUALITY	ADJUST COLOR
		SET REGISTRATION
		AUTO SENSE MODE
		PRINT MODES

	OPTIMIZE QUICK CALIBRATE NOW FULL CALIBRATE NOW COLOR RET CREATE CLEANING PAGE PROCESS CLEANING PAGE AUTO CLEANING CLEANING INTERVAL
SYSTEM SETUP	DATE/TIME JOB STORAGE LIMIT JOB HELD TIMEOUT SHOW ADDRESS RESTRICT COLOR USE COLOR/BLACK MIX TRAY BEHAVIOR SLEEP DELAY WAKE TIME DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS PERSONALITY CLEARABLE WARNINGS AUTO CONTINUE REPLACE SUPPLIES ORDER AT COLOR SUPPLY OUT JAM RECOVERY RAM DISK LANGUAGE
STAPLER STACKER This menu appears if a stapler/stacker is installed	STAPLES STAPLES OUT OFFSET
I/O	I/O TIMEOUT PARALLEL INPUT EMBEDDED JETDIRECT EIO X JETDIRECT

(Where X=1 or 2)	
RESETS	RESTORE FACTORY SETTINGS
	SLEEP MODE

Diagnostics menu

See [Diagnostics menu](#) for more information.

DIAGNOSTICS	PRINT EVENT LOG
	SHOW EVENT LOG
	PQ TROUBLESHOOTING
	PRINT DIAGNOSTICS PAGE
	DISABLE CARTRIDGE CHECK
	PAPER PATH SENSORS
	PAPER PATH TEST
	MANUAL SENSOR TEST
	MANUAL SENSOR TEST 2
	COMPONENT TEST
	PRINT/STOP TEST
	COLOR BAND TEST

Retrieve job menu

The retrieve job menu allows you to view listings of all stored jobs.

Menu item	Description
PRINT STORED JOB LIST	Prints a page that lists all jobs stored on the printer. Each person who has jobs stored on the printer is listed. The number in parentheses indicates how many jobs that person has stored.
NO STORED JOBS	If there are no stored jobs, this message appears in place of the list.
USER NAME	Each user who has stored jobs is listed by name. Select the appropriate user name to see a list of stored jobs.
ALL PRIVATE JOBS	This message is displayed if a user has stored jobs that require a PIN.
PRINT	When printing a private job, the user is prompted to enter a PIN.
COPIES	The number of copies of the job to be printed. The default is 1.
DELETE	When deleting a private job, the user is prompted to enter a PIN.

Information menu

Use the information menu to access and print specific printer information.

Menu item	Description
PRINT MENU MAP	Prints the control panel menu map, which shows the layout and current settings of the control panel menu items. See Printer information pages .
PRINT CONFIGURATION	Prints the printer configuration page.
PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE	Prints the estimated remaining life for the supplies; reports statistics on total number of pages and jobs processed, print cartridge manufacture date, serial number, page counts, and maintenance information.
SUPPLIES STATUS	Displays the status of the print cartridges, fuser kit, and transfer kit in a scrollable list.
PRINT USAGE PAGE	Prints a count of all media sizes that have passed through the printer; lists whether they were simplex, duplex, monochrome, or color; and reports the page count.
PRINT DEMO	Prints a demonstration page.
PRINT RGB SAMPLES	Prints color samples for different RGB values. The samples act as a guide for color matching on the HP Color LaserJet 4700.
PRINT CMYK SAMPLES	Prints color samples for different CMYK values. The samples act as a guide for color matching on the HP Color LaserJet 4700.
PRINT FILE DIRECTORY	Prints the name and directory of files stored in the printer on an optional hard disk.
PRINT PCL FONT LIST	Prints the available PCL fonts.
PRINT PS FONT LIST	Prints the available PS (emulated PostScript) fonts.

Paper handling menu

The paper handling menu allows you to configure input trays by size and type. It is important to correctly configure the trays with this menu before you print for the first time.



NOTE If you have used other HP LaserJet printer models, you might be accustomed to configuring Tray 1 to **First** mode or **Cassette** mode. On HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers, setting Tray 1 size and type to **ANY SIZE** is equivalent to **First** mode. Setting size or type for Tray 1 to a setting other than **ANY SIZE** is equivalent to **Cassette** mode.

Menu item	Value	Description
TRAY 1 SIZE	A list of available sizes appears.	Allows you to configure the media size for Tray 1. The default is ANY SIZE . See Supported media weights and sizes for a complete list of available sizes.
TRAY 1 TYPE	A list of available types appears.	Allows you to configure the media type for Tray 1. The default is ANY TYPE . See Supported media weights and sizes for a complete list of available types.
TRAY <N> SIZE N = 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6	A list of available sizes appears.	Allows you to configure the media size for Trays 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6. The default is Letter . The media size is detected by the guides in the tray. See Supported media weights and sizes for a complete list of available sizes.
TRAY <N> TYPE N = 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6	A list of available types appears.	Allows you to configure the media type for Trays 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6. The default is PLAIN . See Supported media weights and sizes for a complete list of available types.

Configure device menu

The **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu allows you to change the default printing settings, adjust the print quality, change the system configuration and I/O options, and reset the default settings.

Printing menu

These settings affect only jobs without identified properties. Most jobs identify all of the properties and override the values set from this menu. This menu can also be used to set default media size and type.

Menu item	Values	Description
COPIES	1-32000	Allows you to set the default number of copies. The default number is 1 .
DEFAULT PAPER SIZE	A list of available sizes appears.	Allows you to set the default media size.
DEFAULT CUSTOM PAPER SIZE	UNIT OF MEASURE X DIMENSION Y DIMENSION	Allows you to set the default size for any job without dimensions. The default unit of measurement is MILLIMETER .
DUPLEX	OFF ON	Allows you to enable or disable the duplex function on models with duplexing capability. The default is OFF .
DUPLEX BINDING	LONG EDGE SHORT EDGE	Allows you to specify which edge of the sheet is to be bound when printing duplex jobs. The default is LONG EDGE .
OVERRIDE A4/LETTER	NO YES	Allows you to set the printer to print an A4 job on letter-size paper when no A4 paper is loaded. The default is YES .
MANUAL FEED	OFF ON	Allows you to manually feed media. The default is OFF .
COURIER FONT	REGULAR DARK	Allows you to select a version of the Courier font. The default is REGULAR .
WIDE A4	NO YES	Allows you to change the printable area of A4 paper so that eighty 10-pitch characters may be printed on a single line. The default is NO .
PRINT PS ERRORS	OFF ON	Allows you to select to print PS error pages. The default is OFF .
PRINT PDF ERRORS	OFF ON	Allows you to select to print PDF error pages. The default is OFF .
PCL	FORM LENGTH ORIENTATION FONT SOURCE FONT NUMBER	FORM LENGTH: Sets vertical spacing from 5 to 128 lines for default paper size. ORIENTATION: Allows you to select default page orientation to portrait or landscape.

Menu item	Values	Description
	FONT PITCH	FONT SOURCE: Allows you to select the font source as internal, card slot 1, 2, or 3, internal disk, or EIO disk.
	FONT POINT SIZE	
	SYMBOL SET	FONT NUMBER: The printer assigns a number to each font and lists the numbers on the PCL font list. The range is 0 to 999.
	APPEND CR TO LF	
	SUPPRESS BLANK PAGES	FONT PITCH: Selects the font pitch. This item might not appear, depending on the font selected. The range is 0.44 to 99.99.
	MEDIA SOURCE MAPPING	
		FONT POINT SIZE: Selects the font point size. This appears only if a font with a scalable point size is selected as the default font. The range is 4.00 to 999.75.
		SYMBOL SET: Selects any one of several available symbol sets at the printer control panel. A symbol set is a unique grouping of all the characters in a font. PC-8 or PC-850 is recommended for line-draw characters.
		APPEND CR TO LF: Select Yes to append a carriage return to each line feed encountered in backward-compatible PCL jobs (pure text, no job control). Some environments, such as UNIX, indicate a new line using only the line feed control code. This option allows you to append the required carriage return to each line feed.
		SUPPRESS BLANK PAGES: When generating your own PCL, extra form feeds are included that would cause a blank page to be printed. Select Yes for form feeds to be ignored if the page is blank.
		The PCL5 MEDIA SOURCE MAPPING command selects an input tray by a number that maps to the various available trays and feeders.

Print quality menu

This menu allows you to adjust all aspects of print quality, including calibration, registration, and color halftone settings.

Menu item	Values	Description
ADJUST COLOR	HIGHLIGHTS	Allows you to modify the half tone settings for each color. The default for each color is 0.
	MIDTONES	
	SHADOWS	
	RESTORE COLOR VALUES	
SET REGISTRATION	PRINT TEST PAGE	Shifts the margin alignment to center the image on the page from top to bottom, and left to right. You can also align the image

Menu item	Values	Description
	SOURCE ADJUST TRAY [N]	<p>that is printed on the front with the image that is printed on the back.</p> <p>PRINT TEST PAGE: Prints a test page that shows the current registration settings.</p> <p>SOURCE: Allows you to select the tray for which you want to print the test page. If installed, optional trays appear as selections, where [N] is the number of the tray.</p> <p>ADJUST TRAY [N]: Sets the registration from the specified tray, where [N] is the number of the tray. A selection appears for each tray that is installed, and registration must be set for each tray.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● X1 SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from side to side, as the paper lies in the tray. For duplexing, this side is the second side (back) of the paper. ● X2 SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from side to side, as the paper lies in the tray, for the first side (front) of a duplexed page. This item appears only if a duplexer is installed and enabled. Set the X1 SHIFT first. ● Y SHIFT: Registration of the image on the paper from top to bottom, as the paper lies in the tray.
AUTO SENSE MODE	TRAY 1 SENSING TRAY 2-N SENSING	<p>Allows you to set trays to automatically sense the type of paper loaded. For more information, see the section entitled Automatic media type sensing (auto sense mode).</p>
PRINT MODES	A list of available modes appears.	Allows you to associate each media type with a specific print mode.
OPTIMIZE	<p>A list of available parameters appears.</p> <p>BELT CONTACT</p> <p>CACO3 PAPER</p> <p>TALC PAPER</p> <p>BACKGROUND 1</p> <p>BACKGROUND 2</p> <p>TRANSPARENCY</p> <p>MEDIA TYPE</p> <p>REGISTRATION</p> <p>LONG PAPER</p>	<p>Allows you to optimize certain parameters for all jobs rather than optimizing by media type.</p>

Menu item	Values	Description
	PRE-ROTATION RE-TRANSFER FUSER TEMP TRAY 1 RESTORE OPTIMIZE	
QUICK CALIBRATE NOW		Performs partial printer calibrations. For more information, see Calibrating the printer .
FULL CALIBRATE NOW		Performs all printer calibrations. For more information, see Calibrating the printer .
COLOR RET	OFF ON	The COLOR RET menu item allows you to turn on or turn off the printer REt (Resolution Enhancement Technology) setting. The default is ON .
CLEANING INTERVAL	1000 2000 5000 10000 20000	Select CLEANING INTERVAL to set the interval for automatic cleaning. The intervals correspond to the number of pages that the printer has printed. The default is 1000 . See Using the cleaning page for more information.
AUTO CLEANING	Off On	Select AUTO CLEANING to turn automatic cleaning on or off. The default is Off . See Using the cleaning page for more information.
CREATE CLEANING PAGE	No value to select.	Select CREATE CLEANING PAGE to create a cleaning page for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 and HP Color LaserJet 4700n printers. Printers equipped with an external duplexer generate a cleaning page automatically when PROCESS CLEANING PAGE is selected. See Using the cleaning page for more information.
PROCESS CLEANING PAGE	No value to select.	Select PROCESS CLEANING PAGE to process the cleaning page. See Using the cleaning page for more information.

System setup menu

The system setup menu allows you to make changes to general printer configuration default settings such as sleep mode, printer personality (language), and jam recovery.

See [Changing printer control panel configuration settings](#) for more information.

Menu item	Values	Description
DATE/TIME	DATE	Allows you to set various configurations for the date format when setting the date and select a 12-hour or 24-hour clock when setting time.
	DATE FORMAT	
	TIME	
	TIME FORMAT	
JOB STORAGE LIMIT	1-100	Sets the limit for the maximum number of jobs stored on the hard disk at the printer. The default is 32 .
JOB HELD TIMEOUT	OFF	Sets the period of time that the system keeps files in job storage before deleting them from the queue. The default is OFF .
	1 HOUR	
	4 HOURS	
	1 DAY	
	1 WEEK	
SHOW ADDRESS	AUTO	This item determines whether the printer's IP address is shown on the display with the Ready message. If more than one EIO card is installed, the IP address of the card in the first slot is shown. The default is OFF .
	OFF	
RESTRICT COLOR USE	DISABLE COLOR	Disables or restricts color use. The default is ENABLE COLOR . To use the COLOR IF ALLOWED setting, set up user permissions by using the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server .
	ENABLE COLOR	
	COLOR IF ALLOWED	
COLOR/BLACK MIX	AUTO	This menu item establishes how the printer switches from color to monochrome (black and white) mode for maximum performance and print cartridge life. AUTO will reset the printer to the factory default setting. The default is AUTO . Select MOSTLY COLOR PAGES if nearly all of your print jobs are color with high page coverage. Select MOSTLY BLACK PAGES if you print mostly monochrome print jobs, or a combination of color and monochrome print jobs.
	MOSTLY COLOR PAGES	
	MOSTLY BLACK PAGES	
TRAY BEHAVIOR	USE REQUESTED TRAY	Allows you to specify settings for the tray selection behavior. (This setting allows you to configure the trays to behave like trays in some previous HP printers and to configure two-sided printing behavior for pre-printed paper.) The default for USE REQUESTED TRAY is EXCLUSIVELY .
	MANUALLY FEED PROMPT	
	PS DEFER MEDIA	
	SIZE/TYPE PROMPT	
	USE ANOTHER TRAY	

Menu item	Values	Description
	DUPLEX BLANK PAGES	The default for USE ANOTHER TRAY is ENABLED .
	IMAGE ROTATION	<p>The default for MANUALLY FEED PROMPT is ALWAYS.</p> <p>PS DEFER MEDIA affects how paper is handled when printing from an Adobe PS print driver. ENABLED uses HP's paper handling. DISABLED uses the Adobe PS paper handling. The default is ENABLED.</p> <p>The default for DUPLEX BLANK PAGES is AUTO.</p> <p>The default for IMAGE ROTATION is Standard.</p> <p>See Changing printer control panel configuration settings for more information.</p>
SLEEP DELAY	1 Minute 15 MINUTES 30 MINUTES 45 MINUTES 60 MINUTES 90 MINUTES 2 HOURS 4 HOURS	Reduces power consumption when the printer has been inactive for the selected period. The default is 30 MINUTES .
WAKE TIME	A list of day and hour variables appears.	The default is DAILY at 7:30 AM . This menu item opens a wizard that can be used to set the printer wake time.
DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS	Range is 1 through 10.	Sets the brightness of the control panel display. The default is 5 .
PERSONALITY	AUTO PCL PDF PS	Sets the default personality to automatic switching, PCL, PDF, or PostScript emulation modes. The default is AUTO .
CLEARABLE WARNINGS	JOB ON	Sets whether a warning is cleared on the control panel or when another job is sent. The default is JOB .
AUTO CONTINUE	OFF ON	Determines printer behavior when the system generates an Auto Continuable error. The default is ON .
REPLACE SUPPLIES	STOP AT OUT STOP AT LOW OVERRIDE AT OUT	Sets printer behavior when a cartridge is low. The default is STOP AT OUT . This option allows the printer to continue printing until a color supply is exhausted. When the printer is set to STOP AT LOW , printing

Menu item	Values	Description
		pauses until the color supply is replaced. OVERRIDE AT OUT allows printing to continue when a color supply is out, but displays a warning that override is in use and that the supply must be replaced.
ORDER AT	RANGE=0-100	The user can set the percent remaining at which the ORDER AT message is displayed. The default is 15 .
COLOR SUPPLY OUT	STOP AUTOCONTINUE BLACK	Sets the COLOR SUPPLY OUT printer behavior when a color supply is empty. When the printer is set to AUTOCONTINUE BLACK , the printer will continue printing using black toner only. The default is STOP .
JAM RECOVERY	AUTO OFF ON	Sets whether the printer will attempt to reprint pages after a jam. The default is AUTO .
RAM DISK	AUTO OFF	Allows you to specify how the RAM disk is configured. When set to AUTO , the printer determines the optimal RAM disk size based on the amount of available memory. The default is AUTO . This message displays in models that do not have a hard disk installed.
LANGUAGE	A listing of available languages appears.	Sets the default language. The default language is ENGLISH .

Stapler/stacker menu

This menu is available if a stapler/stacker is installed on the printer.

Menu item	Values	Description
STAPLES	NONE 1-EDGE	The STAPLES menu defines how the stapler/stacker processes a job that has no stapling instructions. The device can be configured to staple the job (1-EDGE) or to not staple the job (NONE). The default is NONE . Only supported paper sizes can be stapled.

Menu item	Values	Description
STAPLES OUT	CONTINUE STOP	The STAPLES OUT menu defines the action that the stapler/stacker takes when it runs out of staples. It can instruct the printer to stop and wait until the stapler cartridge is replaced, or it can allow printing to continue without stapling. If the device is configured to stop when the cartridge is empty, up to two jobs might be processed without stapling before the printer stops. The default is CONTINUE .
OFFSET	ENABLED DISABLED	The OFFSET menu stipulates whether the job should be offset. When this configuration is set at the control panel, it is applied to all subsequent jobs. It cannot be applied on a job-by-job basis. The default is ENABLED . Only supported paper sizes can be offset.

I/O menu

This menu allows you to configure the printer's I/O options.

See [Network configuration](#).

Menu item	Values	Description
I/O TIMEOUT	15 SECONDS Range:5 - 300	Allows you to set the printer I/O timeout in seconds.
PARALLEL INPUT	HIGH SPEED ADVANCED FUNCTIONS	Allows you to select the speed at which the parallel port communicates with the host and to enable or disable the bi-directional parallel communication. The default for HIGH SPEED is YES . The default for ADVANCED FUNCTIONS is ON .
EMBEDDED JETDIRECT MENU	The values may vary. Possible values may include: TCP/IP IPX/SPX APPLETALK DLC/LLC SECURE WEB DIAGNOSTICS RESET SECURITY LINK SPEED	TCP/IP : Select whether the TCP/IP protocol stack is enabled or disabled. You can set several parameters. Select the TCP/IP CONFIGURE METHOD to configure the EIO card. For the MANUAL option, select the values for IP ADDRESS , SUBNET MASK , LOCAL GATEWAY , and DEFAULT GATEWAY . IPX/SPX : Select whether the IPX/SPX protocol stack (in Novell NetWare networks, for example) is enabled or disabled. APPLETALK : Enable or disable an AppleTalk network.

Menu item	Values	Description
		<p>DLC/LLC: Select whether the DLC/LLC protocol stack is enabled or disabled.</p> <p>SECURE WEB: Specify whether the embedded Web server accepts communications by using only secure HTTP (HTTPS) or by using both HTTP and HTTPS.</p> <p>DIAGNOSTICS: Provides tests to help diagnose network hardware or TCP/IP network connection problems.</p> <p>RESET SECURITY: Specifies whether the current security settings on the print server are saved or reset to factory defaults.</p> <p>LINK SPEED: Selects the network link speed and communication mode for the 10/100T print server. To ensure proper communication, the Jetdirect settings must match those of the network.</p>
EIO X (Where X =1 or 2)	<p>The values may vary. Possible values may include:</p> <p>TCP/IP</p> <p>IPX/SPX</p> <p>APPLETALK</p> <p>DLC/LLC</p> <p>SECURE WEB</p> <p>RESET SECURITY</p> <p>LINK SPEED</p>	<p>TCP/IP: Select whether the TCP/IP protocol stack is enabled or disabled. You can set several parameters.</p> <p>Select the TCP/IP CONFIGURE METHOD to configure the EIO card. For the MANUAL option, select the values for IP ADDRESS, SUBNET MASK, LOCAL GATEWAY, and DEFAULT GATEWAY.</p> <p>IPX/SPX: Select whether the IPX/SPX protocol stack (in Novell NetWare networks, for example) is enabled or disabled.</p> <p>APPLETALK: Enable or disable an AppleTalk network.</p> <p>DLC/LLC: Select whether the DLC/LLC protocol stack is enabled or disabled.</p> <p>SECURE WEB: Specify whether the embedded Web server accepts communications by using only secure HTTP (HTTPS) or by using both HTTP and HTTPS.</p> <p>DIAGNOSTICS: Provides tests to help diagnose network hardware or TCP/IP network connection problems.</p> <p>RESET SECURITY: Specifies whether the current security settings on the print server are saved or reset to factory defaults.:</p> <p>LINK SPEED: Selects the network link speed and communication mode for the 10/100T print server. To ensure proper</p>

Menu item	Values	Description
		communication, the Jetdirect settings must match those of the network.

Resets menu

The resets menu allows you to reset factory settings, disable and enable sleep mode, and update the printer after new supplies are installed.

Menu item	Values	Description
RESTORE FACTORY SETTINGS	None.	Allows you to clear the page buffer, remove all perishable personality data, reset the printing environment, and return all default settings to factory defaults.
SLEEP MODE	Values are ON and OFF .	Allows you to enable and disable sleep mode. The default is ON .

Diagnostics menu

The diagnostics menu allows you to run tests that can help you identify and solve problems with the printer.

Menu item	Description
PRINT EVENT LOG	This item will print an event log that will display the last 50 entries in the printer's event log, starting with the most recent.
SHOW EVENT LOG	This item displays the last 50 events on the control panel display, starting with the most recent.
PQ TROUBLESHOOTING	This item prints a series of 8 pages that include instructions, pages for each color, demo page, and configuration page. These pages can help isolate print quality problems.
PRINT DIAGNOSTICS PAGE	This item allows you to print a page that can assist in diagnosing printer problems.
DISABLE CARTRIDGE CHECK	This item allows you to remove a print cartridge to help determine which cartridge is the source of a problem.
Paper Path SENSOR TEST	This item performs a test on each of the printer's sensors to determine if they are working correctly and displays the status of each sensor.
PAPER PATH TEST	This item is useful for testing the paper handling features of the printer, such as the configuration of the trays.
MANUAL SENSOR TEST	This item performs tests to determine whether the paper path sensors are operating correctly.
MANUAL SENSOR TEST 2	This item performs tests to determine whether the paper path sensors are operating correctly.
COMPONENT TEST	This item will activate individual parts independently to isolate noise, leaking, and other hardware issues.
PRINT/STOP TEST	This item isolates print quality faults more accurately by stopping the printer in mid-print cycle. Stopping the printer in mid-print cycle allows you to see where the image begins to degrade. Stopping the printer in mid-print cycle will cause a jam that may need to be manually removed. A service representative should perform this test.
COLOR BAND TEST	Use this page to print a color band test page that is used to identify arcing in the high-voltage power supply.

Changing printer control panel configuration settings

By using the printer control panel, you can make changes to general printer configuration default settings such as tray size and type, sleep mode, printer personality (language), and jam recovery.

The printer control panel can also be accessed from a computer by using the Settings page of the embedded Web server. The computer shows the same information that the control panel shows. For more information, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).



CAUTION Configuration settings seldom need to be changed. Hewlett-Packard recommends that only the system administrator change configuration settings.

Job storage limit

This option sets the limit for the maximum number of jobs stored on the hard disk at the printer. The maximum number allowed is 100, and the default value is 32.

Setting the job storage limit

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **JOB STORAGE LIMIT**.
7. Press **✓** to select **JOB STORAGE LIMIT**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to change the value.
9. Press **✓** to set the value.
10. Press **Menu**.

Job held timeout

This option sets the period of time that the system keeps files in job storage before deleting them from the queue. The default setting for this option is **OFF**; the other available settings are **1 HOUR**, **4 HOURS**, **1 DAY**, and **1 WEEK**.

Setting the job held timeout

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **JOB HELD TIMEOUT**.

7. Press ✓ to select **JOB HELD TIMEOUT**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate time period.
9. Press ✓ to set the time period.
10. Press **Menu**.

Show IP address

This item determines whether the printer IP address is shown on the display with the **Ready** message. Options are **AUTO** and **OFF**. The default setting for this option is **OFF**. If more than one EIO card is installed, the IP address of the card installed in the first slot appears.

Showing the IP address

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **SHOW ADDRESS**.
7. Press ✓ to select **SHOW ADDRESS**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired option.
9. Press ✓ to select the option.
10. Press **Menu**.

Color/black mix

This item allows you to configure printer settings to optimize printer and cartridge performance for the printing environment. If the printer is primarily used for black printing (over two-thirds of the pages are black only), change the printer settings to **MOSTLY BLACK PAGES**. If the printer is primarily used for color printing, change the printer settings to **MOSTLY COLOR PAGES**. If the printer is used for a mix of black-only and color print jobs, it is recommended that you use the printer default of **AUTO**. To determine the percentage of color pages, print a configuration page. See [Printer information pages](#) to learn how to print a configuration page. The configuration page shows the total number of pages printed and the number of color pages printed. To determine the percentage of color pages printed, divide the color page count by the total page count.

Setting the color/black mix

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.

6. Press ▼ to highlight **COLOR/BLACK MIX**.
7. Press ✓ to select **COLOR/BLACK MIX**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the desired option.
9. Press ✓ to select the option.
10. Press **Menu**.

Tray behavior options

Tray behavior allows seven user-defined options:

- **USE REQUESTED TRAY.** Selecting **EXCLUSIVELY** ensures that the printer will not automatically select another tray when you indicate that a specific tray should be used. Selecting **FIRST** allows the printer to pull from a second tray if the specified tray is empty or does not match the settings specified for the print job. **EXCLUSIVELY** is the default setting.
- **MANUALLY FEED PROMPT.** If you select **ALWAYS** (the default value), the system always displays a prompt before pulling from Tray 1 (multipurpose tray). If you select **UNLESS LOADED**, the system will only display the prompt if Tray 1 is empty.
- **PS DEFER MEDIA.** This setting affects how non-HP PostScript drivers will behave with the device. There is no need to change this setting if using the drivers supplied by HP. If set to **ENABLED**, non-HP PostScript drivers will use the HP tray selection method as the HP drivers do. If set to **DISABLED**, some non-HP PostScript drivers will use the PostScript tray selection method instead of the HP method.
- **SIZE/TYPE PROMPT.** This option allows you to control whether or not the tray configuration message, and corresponding prompt to change type or size is shown when a tray transitions from opened to closed. Values for this option are **Display** and **DO NOT DISPLAY**.
- **USE ANOTHER TRAY.** This menu item allows you to enable or disable the prompt to select another tray. Values for this option are **ENABLED** and **DISABLED**. **ENABLED** is the default.
- **DUPLEX BLANK PAGES.** This item allows you to determine how a job is to be duplexed. The available values are **AUTO**, which is the default value, and **YES**. If **AUTO** is selected, blank pages within the print job are not duplexed. If **YES** is selected, any blank pages within the job are duplexed.
- **IMAGE ROTATION.** This menu item is available only if an output accessory, such as the stapler/stacker, is not installed. The printer applies a 180° rotation to all pages if this menu item is not available or if **STANDARD** is selected. This option lets you place paper in the input tray in the same orientation, regardless of the output accessory.

Setting the printer to use the requested tray

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.

7. Press ✓ to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press ✓ to select **USE REQUESTED TRAY**.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **EXCLUSIVELY** or **FIRST**.
10. Press ✓ to set the behavior.
11. Press **Menu**.

Setting manually feed prompt

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
7. Press ✓ to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press ▼ to highlight **MANUALLY FEED PROMPT**.
9. Press ✓ to select **MANUALLY FEED PROMPT**.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ALWAYS** or **UNLESS LOADED**.
11. Press ✓ to set the behavior.
12. Press **Menu**.

Setting the printer default for PS defer media

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
7. Press ✓ to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press ▼ to highlight **PS DEFER MEDIA**.
9. Press ✓ to select **PS DEFER MEDIA**.
10. Press ✓ to select **ENABLED** or **DISABLED**.
11. Press ✓ to set the behavior.
12. Press **Menu**.

Setting the printer to use size/type prompt

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
7. Press **✓** to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **SIZE/TYPE PROMPT**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **DISPLAY** or **DO NOT DISPLAY**.
10. Press **✓** to set the behavior.
11. Press **Menu**.

Setting the printer to use another tray

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
7. Press **✓** to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **USE ANOTHER TRAY**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **ENABLED** or **DISABLED**.
10. Press **✓** to set the behavior.
11. Press **Menu**.

Setting the printer to duplex blank pages

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.

7. Press **✓** to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **DUPLEX BLANK PAGES**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **AUTO** or **YES**.
10. Press **✓** to set the behavior.
11. Press **Menu**.

Setting the printer to rotate images

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
7. Press **✓** to select **TRAY BEHAVIOR**.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **IMAGE ROTATION**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **STANDARD** or **ALTERNATE**.
10. Press **✓** to set the behavior.
11. Press **Menu**.

Sleep delay

The adjustable sleep mode feature reduces power consumption when the printer has been inactive for an extended period. You can set the length of time before the printer enters sleep mode to **1 MINUTE**, **15 MINUTES**, **30 MINUTES**, **45 MINUTES**, **60 MINUTES**, **90 MINUTES**, **2 HOURS**, or **4 HOURS**. The default setting is **30 MINUTES**.



NOTE The printer display dims when the printer is in sleep mode. This mode does not affect printer warm-up time.

Setting sleep delay

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **SLEEP DELAY**.
7. Press **✓** to select **SLEEP DELAY**.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate time period.
9. Press ✓ to set the time period.
10. Press **Menu**.



CAUTION If paper is loaded in Trays 3 through 6 when the printer is in sleep mode, the new paper will not be sensed when the printer comes out of sleep mode. This could cause the wrong paper to be used for a print job. Be sure to wake the printer before loading paper in these trays.

Disabling/enabling sleep mode

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **RESETS**.
5. Press ✓ to select **RESETS**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **SLEEP MODE**.
7. Press ✓ to select **SLEEP MODE**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **ON** or **OFF**.
9. Press ✓ to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Wake time

The wake time feature allows you to instruct the printer to wake at a certain time on selected days, to eliminate waiting for the warm-up and calibration periods. You must have **SLEEP MODE** on to set the wake time.

To set or change the wake time, use the following steps:

Setting the wake time

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **WAKE TIME**.
7. Press ✓ to select **WAKE TIME**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the day of the week.

9. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **CUSTOM** or **Off**.
11. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the hour.
13. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
14. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the minutes.
15. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
16. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **AM** or **PM**.
17. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
18. Press ✓ to enter **APPLY TO ALL DAYS**.
19. Press ▲ or ▼ to select **YES** or **NO**.
20. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
21. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the days of the week to which **WAKE TIME** applies.
22. Press ✓ to accept each selection.
23. Press **Menu**.

Display brightness

The display brightness feature allows you to set the level of brightness for the control panel display. The allowable range of values is 1 through 10. The default for this feature is **5**.

To change or set the display brightness, use the following steps:

Setting the display brightness

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS**.
7. Press ✓ to select **DISPLAY BRIGHTNESS**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the desired value.
9. Press ✓ to accept the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Personality

This printer features automatic personality (printer language) switching. **AUTO** is the default value.

- **AUTO** configures the printer to automatically detect the type of print job and configure its personality to accommodate that job.
- **PCL** configures the printer to use Printer Control Language.
- **PDF** configures the printer to print PDF files.
- **PS** configures the printer to use PostScript emulation.

Setting the personality

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **PERSONALITY**.
7. Press ✓ to select **PERSONALITY**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate personality (**AUTO**, **PCL**, **PDF**, or **PS**).
9. Press ✓ to set the personality.
10. Press **Menu**.

Clearable warnings

You can determine the display time of control panel clearable warnings with this option by selecting **ON** or **JOB**. The default value is **JOB**.

- **ON** displays clearable warnings until you press ✓.
- **JOB** displays clearable warnings until the end of the job in which it was generated.

Setting the clearable warnings

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **CLEARABLE WARNINGS**.
7. Press ✓ to select **CLEARABLE WARNINGS**.

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press ✓ to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Auto continue

You can determine printer behavior when the system generates an Auto Continuable error. **ON** is the default setting.

- **ON** displays an error message for ten seconds before automatically continuing to print.
- **OFF** pauses printing any time the printer displays an error message and until you press ✓.

Setting auto continue

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press ✓ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **AUTO CONTINUE**.
7. Press ✓ to select **AUTO CONTINUE**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press ✓ to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Replace supplies

The printer allows three options for handling the printer when a color cartridge is low and should be replaced. **STOP AT OUT** is the default value.

- **STOP AT LOW** pauses printing until the color supply is replaced. The control panel displays a warning that the supply is low and should be replaced.
- **STOP AT OUT** allows the printer to continue printing until the color supply is exhausted. The control panel displays a warning that the supply is out and should be replaced.
- **OVERRIDE AT OUT** allows printing to continue when a color supply is out, but displays a warning that override is in use and that the supply must be replaced.



NOTE Using the Override mode may result in unsatisfactory print quality. HP recommends replacing the supply when the **REPLACE SUPPLY** message is displayed. HP Supplies Premium Protection Warranty coverage ends when a supply is used in Override mode.

Setting replace supplies response

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **REPLACE SUPPLIES**.
7. Press **✓** to select **REPLACE SUPPLIES**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Order at

This menu option allows you to set the point at which you are reminded to order new supplies. The point is measured in terms of percent remaining. The allowable range is **0-100**. The default is **15**.

Setting order at response

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **ORDER AT**.
7. Press **✓** to select **ORDER AT**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Color supply out

There are two options for this menu item. The default is **STOP**.

- **STOP** causes the printer to stop printing until the empty color supply is replaced.
- **AUTOCONTINUE BLACK** allows the printer to continue printing using black toner only when a color supply is empty. A warning message displays on the control panel when the printer is in this mode. Printing in this mode is allowed only for a specific number of pages. After that, the printer will pause printing until you replace the empty color supply.

Setting color supply out response

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **COLOR SUPPLY OUT**.
7. Press **✓** to select **COLOR SUPPLY OUT**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Jam recovery

This option allows you to configure the printer response to paper jams, including how it handles the pages involved. **AUTO** is the default value.

- **AUTO** — the printer automatically turns jam recovery on when sufficient memory is available.
- **OFF** — the printer will not reprint any page that was involved in a paper jam. Since no memory is used to store the most recent pages, performance may be optimal.
- **ON** — the printer reprints any page involved in a paper jam. Additional memory is allocated to store the last few pages printed, and this might cause overall printer performance to suffer.

Setting jam recovery response

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **JAM RECOVERY**.
7. Press **✓** to select **JAM RECOVERY**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the appropriate setting.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

RAM disk

This option allows you to specify how the RAM disk is configured. Options are **AUTO** and **OFF**. When set to **AUTO**, the printer determines the optimal RAM size based on the amount of available memory. The message displays only in printer models that do not have a hard disk installed. The default is **AUTO**.

Changing RAM disk behavior

You can change this behavior at any time by following these steps:

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **RAM DISK**.
7. Press **✓** to select **RAM DISK**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **AUTO** or **OFF**.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Language

On some products, the option to set the default language appears when the printer is first initialized. Use the **▲** or **▼** arrow to scroll through the available options. When the desired language is highlighted, press the **✓** to set the default language. The default language is **ENGLISH**.

You may also change the language at any time by following these steps:

Selecting the language

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **LANGUAGE**.
7. Press **✓** to select **LANGUAGE**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the appropriate language.
9. Press **✓** to set the selection.
10. Press **Menu**.

Selecting the language if the display is in a language you do not understand

1. Turn the printer power off.
2. Hold down the ✓ key while turning the printer power on until all three lights stay on.
3. Press ✓ again.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the available languages.
5. Press ✓ to save the desired language as the new default.

Using the printer control panel in shared environments

Because your printer is shared with other users, adhere to the following guidelines to ensure successful printer operation:

- Consult your system administrator before making changes to control panel settings. Changing control panel settings could affect other print jobs.
- Coordinate with other users before changing the default printer font or downloading soft fonts. Coordinating these operations conserves memory and avoids unexpected printer output.
- Be aware that switching printer personalities, such as Emulated PostScript or PCL, affects the printed output of other users.



NOTE Your network operating system may automatically protect each user's print job from the effects of other print jobs. Consult your system administrator for more information.

3 I/O configuration

This chapter describes how to configure certain network parameters on the printer. The following topics are covered:

- [Network configuration](#)
- [Parallel configuration](#)
- [USB configuration](#)
- [Auxiliary connection configuration](#)
- [HP Jetdirect print servers](#)
- [Wireless printing](#)

Network configuration

You might need to configure certain network parameters on the printer. You can configure these parameters from installation software, the printer control panel, the embedded Web server, or management software, such as HP Web Jetadmin or the HP LaserJet Utility for Macintosh.



NOTE For more information about using the embedded Web server, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

For more information about supported networks and network configuration tools, see the *HP Jetdirect Print Server Administrator's Guide*. The guide comes with printers in which an HP Jetdirect print server is installed.

This section contains the following instructions for configuring network parameters from the printer control panel:

- Configuring TCP/IP parameters.
- Disabling unused network protocols.

Configuring TCP/IP parameters

You can use the printer control panel to configure these TCP/IP parameters:

- IP address (4 bytes)
- Subnet mask (4 bytes)
- Default gateway (4 bytes)

Manually configuring TCP/IP parameters from the printer control panel

Use manual configuration to set an IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

Setting an IP address

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press **✓** to select **I/O**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JETDIRECT** menu.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **TCP/IP**.
9. Press **✓** to select **TCP/IP**.
10. Press **▼** to highlight **MANUAL SETTINGS**.
11. Press **✓** to select **MANUAL SETTINGS**.

12. Press ▼ to highlight **MANUAL**.
13. Press ▼ to highlight **IP ADDRESS**.
14. Press ✓ to select **IP ADDRESS**.



NOTE The first of three sets of numbers is highlighted. If a number is not highlighted, a highlighted empty underscore appears.

15. Press ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the number for configuring the IP address.
16. Press ✓ to move to the next set of numbers.
17. Repeat steps 15 and 16 until the correct IP address is entered.
18. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Setting the subnet mask

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press ✓ to select **I/O**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press ✓ to select the **JETDIRECT** menu.
8. Press ▼ to highlight the **TCP/IP** menu.
9. Press ✓ to select **TCP/IP**.
10. Press ▼ to highlight **MANUAL SETTINGS**.
11. Press ✓ to select **MANUAL SETTINGS**.
12. Press ▼ to highlight **SUBNET MASK**.
13. Press ✓ to select **SUBNET MASK**.



NOTE The first of three sets of numbers is highlighted.

14. Press ▲ or ▼ to increase or decrease the number for configuring the subnet mask.
15. Press ✓ to move to the next set of numbers.
16. Repeat steps 14 and 15 until the correct subnet mask is entered.
17. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Setting the default gateway

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press **✓** to select **I/O**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JETDIRECT** menu.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **TCP/IP**.
9. Press **✓** to select **TCP/IP**.
10. Press **▼** to highlight **MANUAL SETTINGS**.
11. Press **✓** to select **MANUAL SETTINGS**.
12. Press **▼** to highlight **DEFAULT GATEWAY**.
13. Press **✓** to select **DEFAULT GATEWAY**.



NOTE The first set of the three sets of numbers shows the default settings. If there is not a number highlighted, a highlighted empty underscore appears.

14. Press **▲** or **▼** to increase or decrease the number for configuring **DEFAULT GATEWAY**.
15. Press **✓** to move to the next set of numbers.
16. Repeat steps 15 and 16 until the correct subnet mask is entered.
17. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Disabling network protocols (optional)

By factory default, all supported network protocols are enabled. Disabling unused protocols has the following benefits:

- Decreases printer-generated network traffic.
- Prevents unauthorized users from printing to the printer.
- Provides only pertinent information on the configuration page.
- Allows the printer control panel to display protocol-specific error and warning messages.



NOTE TCP/IP configuration cannot be disabled on the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer.

Disabling IPX/SPX



NOTE Do not disable this protocol if Windows 95/98, Windows NT, Me, 2000, and XP users will be printing to the printer using direct-mode IPX/SPX.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press **✓** to select **I/O**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JETDIRECT** menu.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **IPX/SPX**.
9. Press **✓** to select **IPX/SPX**.
10. Press **▼** to highlight **ENABLE**.
11. Press **✓** to select **ENABLE**.
12. Press **▼** to highlight **ON** or **OFF**.
13. Press **✓** to select **ON** or **OFF**.
14. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Disabling DLC/LLC

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press **✓** to select **I/O**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JETDIRECT** menu.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **DLC/LLC**.
9. Press **✓** to select **DLC/LLC**.
10. Press **▼** to highlight **ENABLE**.
11. Press **✓** to select **ENABLE**.
12. Press **▼** to highlight **ON** or **OFF**.

13. Press ✓ to select **ON** or **OFF**.
14. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Disabling AppleTalk

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **I/O**.
5. Press ✓ to select **I/O**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight the **JETDIRECT** menu.
7. Press ✓ to select **JETDIRECT**.
8. Press ▼ to highlight **APPLETALK**.
9. Press ✓ to select **APPLETALK**.
10. Press ▼ to highlight **ENABLE**.
11. Press ✓ to select **ENABLE**.
12. Press ▼ to highlight **ON** or **OFF**.
13. Press ✓ to select **ON** or **OFF**.
14. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

Parallel configuration

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer supports network and parallel connections at the same time. A parallel connection is made by connecting the printer to the computer using a bidirectional parallel cable (IEEE-1284-C compliant) with a C-connector plugged into the printer parallel port. The cable can be a maximum of 10 meters (30 feet) long.

When used to describe a parallel interface, the term bidirectional indicates that the printer is able to both receive data from the computer and send data to the computer through the parallel port.

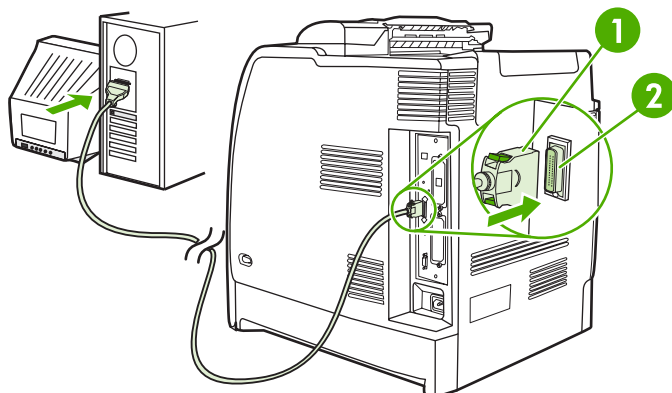


Figure 3-1 Parallel port configuration

1	C-connector
2	Parallel port



NOTE To use the enhanced capabilities of the bidirectional parallel interface such as bidirectional communication between the computer and printer, faster transfer of data, and automatic configuration of printer drivers, ensure that the most recent printer driver is installed. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

NOTE Factory settings support automatic switching between the parallel port and one or more network connections on the printer. If you are experiencing problems, see [Network configuration](#).

USB configuration

This printer supports a USB 2.0 connection. The USB port is located on the back of the printer, as shown in the figure below. You must use an A-to-B type USB cable.

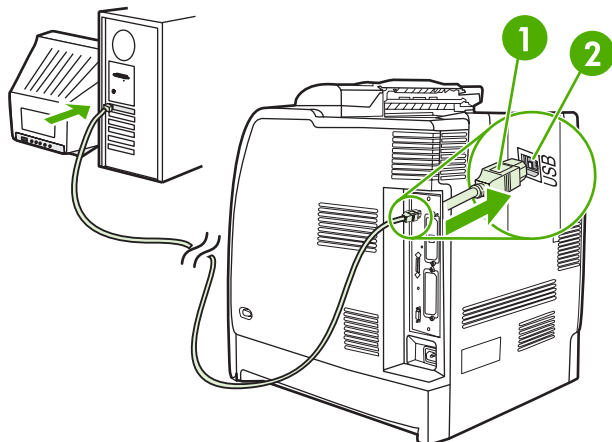
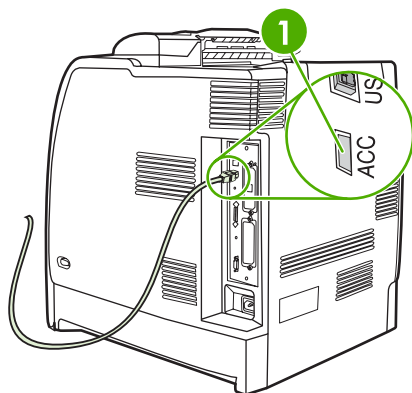


Figure 3-2 USB configuration

1	USB connector
2	USB port

This printer also includes a third-party accessory (ACC) port that uses USB host protocol, shown in the figure below.



1	ACC accessory port
---	--------------------

Auxiliary connection configuration

This printer supports an auxiliary connection for paper handling input devices. The port is located on the back of the printer, as shown in the figure below.

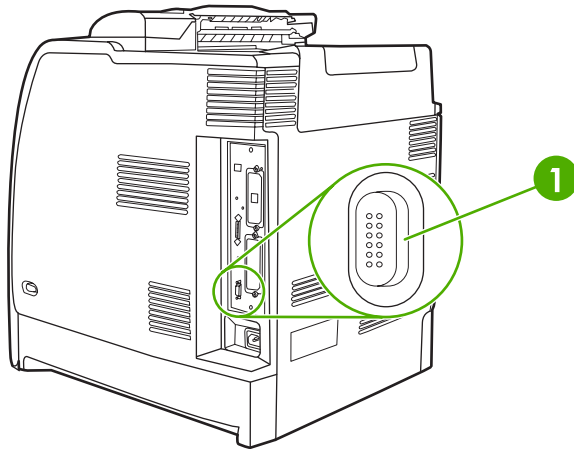


Figure 3-3 Auxiliary connection configuration

1

Auxiliary connector

HP Jetdirect print servers

The HP Jetdirect print servers facilitate network management by allowing you to connect a printer directly to your network at any location. They support multiple network protocols and operating systems. HP Jetdirect print servers also support the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), which provides network managers with remote printer management and troubleshooting through HP Web Jetadmin software.

The HP Color LaserJet 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn, and 4700ph+ printers are equipped with embedded HP Jetdirect print servers. These servers support Ethernet 10/100T networking for peripherals. An HP Jetdirect EIO print server can also be installed in one of the HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer's EIO slots to allow network connection.



NOTE Installation of an EIO print server and network configuration should be performed by a network administrator. Configure the card either through the control panel or with HP Web Jetadmin software.

Available software solutions

For a summary of available software solutions, refer to the *HP Jetdirect Print Server Administrator's Guide*, or visit http://www.hp.com/support/net_printing.

Wireless printing

Wireless networks offer a safe, secure, and cost-effective alternative to traditional wired network connections. See [Supplies and accessories](#) for a list of available wireless print servers.

IEEE 802.11 standard

Optional HP Jetdirect wireless print servers support connection to an 802.11 network. This wireless technology provides a high-quality printing solution without the physical constraints of wiring.

Peripherals can be conveniently placed anywhere in an office or home and can be easily moved without changing network cables. Installation is easy with the HP Install Network Printer Wizard.



NOTE HP Jetdirect 802.11 print servers are available for USB connections.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth wireless technology is a low-power, short-range radio technology that can be used to wirelessly connect computers, printers, personal digital assistants (PDAs), cell phones, and other devices.

Unlike infrared technology, Bluetooth's reliance on radio signals means that devices do not have to be in the same room, office, or cubicle with an unobstructed line of sight in order to communicate. This wireless technology increases portability and efficiency within business network applications.

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer uses a Bluetooth adapter (HP bt1300) to incorporate Bluetooth wireless technology. The adapter is available for either USB or parallel connections. The adapter has a 10-meter line-of-sight operation range in the 2.5 GHz ISM band and can achieve data transfer rates up to 723 Kbps. The device supports the following Bluetooth profiles:

- Hardcopy Cable Replacement Profile (HCRP)
- Serial Port Profile (SPP)
- Object Push Profile (OPP)
- Basic Imaging Profile (BIP)
- Basic Printing Profile (BPP) with XHTML-Print

4 Printing tasks

This chapter describes how to perform basic printing tasks. The following topics are covered:

- [Controlling print jobs](#)
- [Selecting print media](#)
- [Automatic media type sensing \(auto sense mode\)](#)
- [Configuring input trays](#)
- [Printing on special media](#)
- [Using features in the printer driver](#)
- [Using features in the Macintosh printer driver](#)
- [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#)
- [Using the stapler/stacker](#)
- [Special printing situations](#)
- [Job storage features](#)
- [Managing memory](#)

Controlling print jobs

In the Microsoft Windows operating system, three settings affect how the printer driver tries to pull paper when you send a print job. The **Source**, **Type**, and **Size** settings appear in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Print Properties** dialog boxes in most software programs. If you do not change these settings, the printer automatically selects a tray using the default printer settings.

Source

Printing by *Source* means that you choose a specific tray from which you want the printer to pull paper. The printer tries to print from this tray, no matter what type or size is loaded. If you choose a tray that is configured for a type or size that does not match your print job, the printer does not print automatically. Instead, it waits for you to load the tray you chose with the type or size of print media for your print job. If you load the tray, the printer begins printing. If you press ✓, the printer displays options to print from another tray.

Type and size

Printing by **Type** or **Size** means that you want the printer to pull paper or print media from the appropriate tray loaded with the correct type and size. Selecting media by type rather than source is similar to locking out trays and helps protect special media from accidental use. For example, if a tray is configured for letterhead and you specify the driver to print on plain paper, the printer will not pull the letterhead from that tray. Instead, it will pull paper from a tray that has plain paper loaded and is configured for plain paper on the printer control panel. Selecting media by **Type** and **Size** results in significantly better print quality for heavy paper, glossy paper, and transparencies. Using the wrong setting might result in unsatisfactory print quality. Always print by **Type** for special print media, such as labels or heavy media. Print by **Size** for envelopes, if possible.

- If you want to print by **Type** or **Size**, select the type or size from the **Page Setup** dialog box, the **Print** dialog box, or the **Print Properties** dialog box, depending on the application.
- If you often print on a certain type or size of media, the printer administrator (for a network printer) or you (for a local printer) can configure a tray for that type or size. Then, when you choose that type or size as you print a job, the printer pulls media from the tray configured for that type or size.

Print setting priorities

Changes made to print settings are prioritized according to where the changes are made as follows:



NOTE The names of commands and dialog boxes may vary depending on your program.

- **Page Setup dialog box.** This dialog box opens when you click **Page Setup** or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in. Settings changed here override settings changed anywhere else.
- **Print dialog box.** This dialog box opens when you click **Print**, **Print Setup**, or a similar command on the **File** menu of the program you are working in. Settings changed in the **Print** dialog box have a lower priority and do not override changes made in the **Page Setup** dialog box.

- **Printer Properties dialog box (printer driver).** The printer driver opens when you click **Properties** in the **Print** dialog box. Settings changed in the **Printer Properties** dialog box do not override settings available anywhere else.
- **Default printer settings.** The default printer settings determine settings used in all print jobs, *unless* settings are changed in the **Page Setup**, **Print**, or **Printer Properties** dialog boxes, as described above. There are two ways to change the default printer settings:
 1. Click **Start**, **Settings**, **Printers**, and then right-click the printer icon, and click **Properties**.
 2. Click **Start**, **Control Panel**, and then select the **Printers** folder, right-click the printer icon, and click **Properties**.

For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).



CAUTION To avoid affecting print jobs of other users, make printer setup changes through the software application or the printer driver whenever possible. Printer setup changes made through the control panel become default settings for subsequent jobs. Changes made through an application or the printer driver affect only that specific job.

Selecting print media

You can use many types of paper and other print media with this printer. This section provides guidelines and specifications for selecting and using different print media. For more information about supported print media, see [Print media specifications](#).

It is possible that media could meet all of the guidelines in this chapter and still not print satisfactorily. This may be due to abnormal characteristics of the printing environment or to other variables over which Hewlett-Packard has no control (for example, extremes in temperature and humidity).

Hewlett-Packard recommends testing any media before buying it in large quantities.



CAUTION Using media that does not conform to the specifications listed here or in the paper specification guide can cause problems that require service. This service is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty or service agreements.

Media to avoid

This printer can handle many types of media. Use of media outside the printer's specifications will cause a loss of print quality and increase the chance of paper jams.

- Do not use paper that is too rough.
- Do not use paper with cutouts or perforations other than standard 3-hole punched paper.
- Do not use multipart forms.
- Do not use paper that has already been printed on or that has been fed through a photocopier.
- Do not use paper with a watermark if you are printing solid patterns.

Paper that can damage the printer

In rare circumstances, paper can damage the printer. Avoid the following paper to prevent possible damage to the printer:

- Do not use paper with staples attached.
- Do not use transparencies designed for inkjet printers or other low-temperature printers, or transparencies designed for monochrome printing. Use only transparencies that are specified for use with HP Color LaserJet printers.
- Do not use glossy or photo papers intended for inkjet printers.
- Do not use paper that is embossed or coated and is not designed for the temperatures of the image fuser. Select media that can tolerate temperatures of 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second.
- Do not use letterhead paper with low-temperature dyes or thermography. Preprinted forms or letterhead must use inks that can tolerate temperatures of 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second.
- Do not use any media that produces undesirable emissions, or that melts, offsets, or discolors when exposed to 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second.

To order HP Color LaserJet printing supplies, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies> in the United States or to <http://www.hp.com/ghp/buyonline.html> worldwide.

Automatic media type sensing (auto sense mode)

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers can automatically classify media into one of the following categories:

- Plain
- Transparency
- Glossy
- Extra-heavy glossy
- Glossy film
- Heavy
- Light

The automatic media type sensor functions only when that tray is configured to Any Type Plain. Configuring a tray to any other type, such as Bond or Glossy, deactivates the media sensor in that tray.



NOTE Get optimal performance with the automatic media sensing feature when using original HP media designed for use in HP color LaserJet printers.

Tray 1 sensing

Full sensing (default)

- The printer stops at each page to sense media type.
- This is the best mode for using mixed media in a single print job.

Expanded sensing

- Each time the printer begins a print job, it stops the first page to sense the type.
- The printer assumes that the second and all subsequent pages are of the same media type as the first page.
- This is the second-fastest mode, and is useful for using stacks of the same media type.

Transparency

- The printer does not stop any pages for sensing but distinguishes between transparencies (Transparency mode) and paper (Normal mode).
- This is the fastest mode and is useful for high-volume printing in Normal mode.

Tray 2–N sensing

Expanded sensing

- The printer stops the first five pages fed from each paper tray to sense the type and averages the five results.
- The printer assumes that the sixth and all subsequent pages are of the same media type, until the printer is turned off or goes into sleep mode, or until the tray is opened.

Transparency only (default)

- The printer does not stop any pages for sensing but distinguishes between transparencies (Transparency mode) and paper (Normal mode).
- This is the fastest mode and is useful for high-volume printing in Normal mode.

Configuring input trays

The printer allows you to configure input trays by type and size. You can load different media in the printer's input trays and then request media by type or size using the control panel.



NOTE If you have used other HP LaserJet printer models, you might be accustomed to configuring Tray 1 to **First** mode or **Cassette** mode. On HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers, setting Tray 1 size and type to **ANY SIZE** is equivalent to **First** mode. Setting size or type for Tray 1 to a setting other than **ANY SIZE** is equivalent to **Cassette** mode.

NOTE If you are duplex printing, be sure that the media loaded meets the specifications for duplex printing. (See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).)

NOTE The instructions below are to configure the trays at the printer control panel. You can also configure the trays from your computer by accessing the embedded Web server. See [Using the embedded Web server](#).

Configuring trays when the printer gives a prompt

In the following situations, the printer automatically prompts you to configure the tray for type and size:

- When you load paper into the tray
- When you specify a particular tray or media type for a print job through the printer driver or a software application and the tray is not configured to match the print job settings

The control panel displays the message **LOAD TRAY XX: [TYPE] [SIZE], To change type press ✓**. The instructions below explain how to configure the tray after the prompt appears.



NOTE The prompt does not appear if you are printing from Tray 1 and if Tray 1 is configured for **ANY SIZE** and **ANY TYPE**.

Configuring a tray when loading paper



CAUTION If paper is loaded in Trays 3 through 6 when the printer is in sleep mode, the new paper will not be sensed when the printer comes out of sleep mode. This could cause the wrong paper to be used for a print job. Be sure to wake the printer before loading paper in these trays.

1. Load paper in the tray. (Close the tray if you are using Tray 2 or one of the optional trays.)
2. The printer displays the tray configuration message **To change size press ✓**.
3. Press ✓ to display the **TRAY X SIZE=** menu.
4. To change 3 mm (42)the size, press ▼ or ▲ to highlight the correct size.
5. Press ✓ to select the size.

A **Setting saved** message appears, and then a prompt appears to configure the paper type.

6. To change the type, press ▼ or ▲ to highlight the correct paper type.
7. Press ✓ to select the paper type.

A **Setting saved** message appears, and then the current type and size settings are displayed.

8. If size and type are now correct, press **↵** to clear the message.

Configuring a tray to match print job settings

1. In the software application, specify the source tray, the paper size, and the paper type.
2. Send the job to the printer.

If the tray needs to be configured, the **LOAD TRAY X:** message appears.

3. Load the tray with the correct paper. When the tray is closed, the **TRAY X SIZE=** appears.
4. If the highlighted size is not correct, press **▼** or **▲** to highlight the correct size.
5. Press **✓** to select the correct size.

A **Setting saved** message appears, and then a prompt appears to configure the paper type.

6. If the highlighted paper type is not correct, press **▼** or **▲** to highlight the desired paper type.
7. Press **✓** to select the paper type.

A **Setting saved** message appears, and then the current type and size settings are displayed.

Configuring trays using the paper handling menu

You can also configure the trays for type and size without a prompt from the printer. Use the **PAPER HANDLING** menu to configure the trays as follows.

Configuring the paper size

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **PAPER HANDLING**.
3. Press **✓** to select **PAPER HANDLING**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY <N> SIZE**. (N represents the number of the tray you are configuring.)
5. Press **✓** to select **TRAY <N> SIZE**.
6. Press **▼** or **▲** to highlight the correct size.
7. Press **✓** to select the correct size.

Configuring the paper type

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **PAPER HANDLING**.
3. Press **✓** to select **PAPER HANDLING**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **TRAY <N> TYPE**. (N represents the number of the tray you are configuring.)
5. Press **✓** to select **TRAY <N> TYPE**.

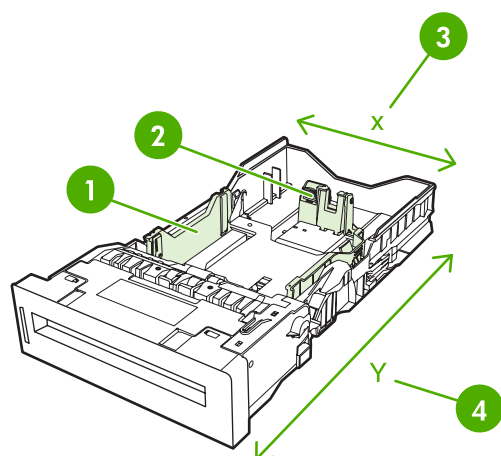
6. Press ▼ or ▲ to highlight the correct paper type.
7. Press ✓ to select the correct paper type.

A **Setting saved** message appears, and then the current type and size settings are displayed.

Configuring Tray 2 and optional trays for a custom paper size

The printer automatically detects many sizes of paper, but you can also configure trays for custom paper sizes. You must specify the following parameters:

- Unit of measure (millimeters or inches)
- X dimension (the width of the page as it feeds into the printer)
- Y dimension (the length of the page as it feeds into the printer)



1	Media width guides
2	Media length guides
3	Page width (X dimension)
4	Page length (Y dimension)

Use the following procedure to configure a tray for a custom size. Once a custom size is set for a tray, it will be retained until the media length guides are reset.

Setting a custom size in Tray 2 or an optional tray

1. Open the tray and place the media face-up in the tray.
2. Set the media length guides to the appropriate non-standard position and close the tray.
3. When the tray configuration message appears, press ✓.
4. Press ▲ to change **ANY CUSTOM** to **CUSTOM**.
5. Press ✓ to select **CUSTOM**.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the correct unit (either millimeters or inches).

7. Press ✓ to select the value.

After the unit of measure is set properly, set the X dimension as follows:

8. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the correct value.
9. Press ✓ to select the value. If the value entered is outside the valid range, **Invalid value** will appear for two seconds. The display prompts you to enter another value.

After the X dimension is set properly, set the Y dimension as follows:

10. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight the correct value.
11. Press ✓ to select the value. If the value entered is outside the valid range, **Invalid value** will appear for two seconds. The display prompts you to enter another value. The printer displays a message indicating the dimensions for the custom size.

Printing from Tray 1 (multipurpose tray)

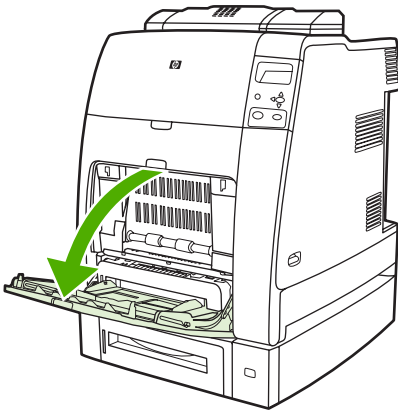
Tray 1 is a multipurpose tray that holds up to 100 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper or 20 envelopes. It provides a convenient way to print envelopes, transparencies, custom-size paper, media heavier than 32 lb, or other types of media without having to unload the other trays.

Loading Tray 1



CAUTION To avoid jams, never add or remove paper from Tray 1 during printing.

1. Open Tray 1.



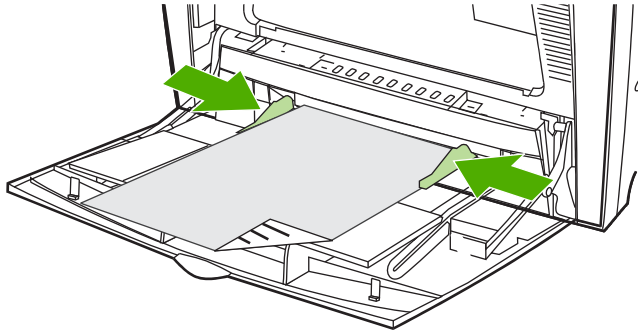
2. Set the side guides to the desired width.
3. Load paper in the tray with the side to be printed facing down and the top of the page facing you.



NOTE Tray 1 can hold approximately 100 sheets of standard 75 g/m² (20 lb) office paper.

NOTE If you are duplex printing, see [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#) for loading instructions.

4. Adjust the side guides so that they lightly touch the paper stack but do not bend the paper.



NOTE Make sure the paper fits under the tabs on the guides and not above the load level indicators.

Printing envelopes from Tray 1

Many types of envelopes can be printed from Tray 1. Up to 20 envelopes can be stacked in the tray. Printing performance depends on the construction of the envelope.

In the software, set margins at least 15 mm (0.6 inches) from the edge of the envelope.



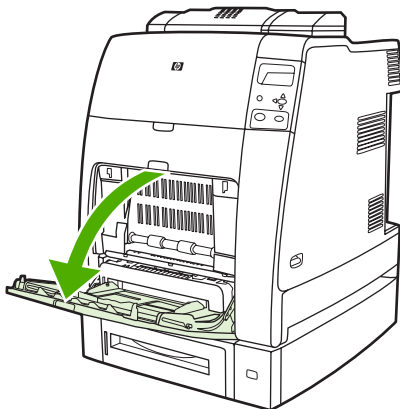
CAUTION Envelopes with clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, exposed self-stick adhesives, or other synthetic materials can severely damage the printer. To avoid jams and possible printer damage, never try to print on both sides of an envelope. Before you load envelopes, make sure they are flat, undamaged, and not stuck together. Do not use envelopes with pressure-sensitive adhesive.

Loading envelopes into Tray 1

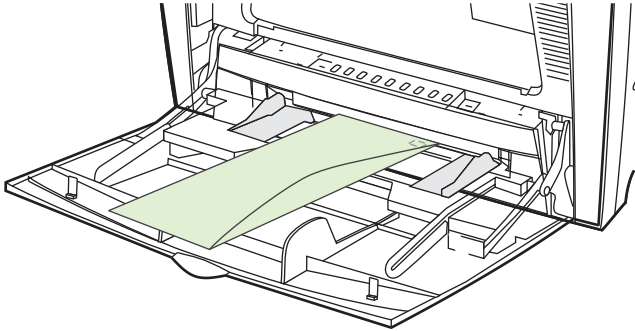


CAUTION To avoid jams, do not remove or insert envelopes during printing.

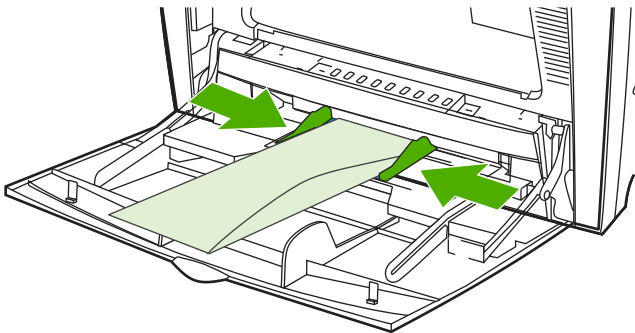
1. Open Tray 1.



2. Load up to 20 envelopes in the center of Tray 1 with the side to be printed facing down and the postage end toward the printer. Slide the envelopes into the printer as far as they will go without forcing them.



3. Adjust the guides to touch the envelope stack without bending the envelopes. Make sure the envelopes fit under the tabs on the guides.



Printing envelopes

1. Specify Tray 1 or select the media source by size in the printer driver.
2. If your software does not automatically format an envelope, specify Landscape for page orientation in your software application or printer driver. Use the following guidelines to set margins for return and destination addresses on Commercial #10 or DL envelopes.

Address type	Left margin	Top margin
Return	5 mm (0.2 inches)	5 mm (0.2 inches)
Destination	102 mm (4 inches)	51 mm (2 inches)



NOTE For envelopes of other sizes, adjust the margin settings appropriately.

3. Select **Print** from the software application or printer driver.

Printing from Tray 2 or the optional trays

Tray 2 and the optional paper trays each hold up to 500 sheets of standard paper or a 50.8 mm (2 in) stack of labels. Tray 2 stacks above the optional 500-sheet trays, and, when properly installed, the printer detects the optional trays and shows them as options in the control panel **CONFIGURE DEVICE** menu. The trays adjust for detectable media sizes; letter, legal, A4, A5, JIS B5, and executive; and undetectable

media sizes: 8.5 x 13 and Executive (JIS), double Japan postcard, and custom. The printer automatically detects the media size in these trays based on the tray's paper guide configuration. (See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).)



CAUTION The paper path for the optional trays passes through Tray 2. If Tray 2 is partially pulled out or removed, paper from Tray 3 cannot feed into the printer. The printer will stop and generate a message that Tray 2 must be installed. Similarly, all trays installed above the tray that is being used must be closed for paper to feed into the printer.

Loading detectable standard-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays



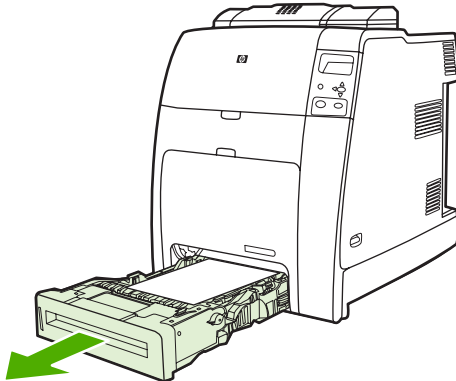
CAUTION If paper is loaded in Trays 3 through 6 when the printer is in sleep mode, the new paper will not be sensed when the printer comes out of sleep mode. This could cause the wrong paper to be used for a print job. Be sure to wake the printer before loading paper in these trays.

The following detectable standard-sized media is supported in Tray 2 and the optional trays: letter, legal, executive, A4, A5, and (JIS) B5.



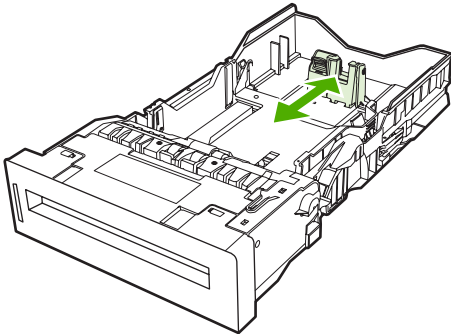
CAUTION Do not print cardstock, envelopes, heavy or extra heavy paper, or unsupported sizes of media from the 500-sheet trays. Print on these types of media only from Tray 1. Do not overfill the input tray or open it while it is in use. Doing so can cause jams in the printer.

1. Remove the tray from the printer.

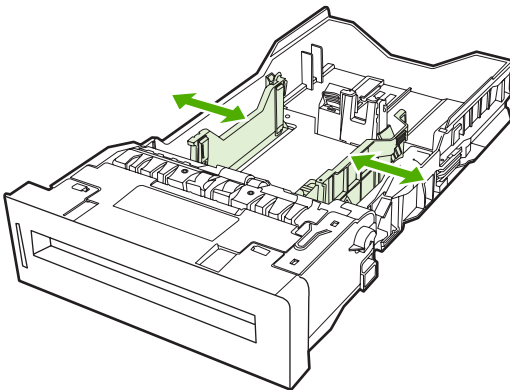


NOTE After sliding the tray out, lift the tray up slightly to remove it.

2. Adjust the rear media-length guide by squeezing the guide adjustment latch and sliding the back of the tray to the length of the media being used.



3. Slide the media-width guides open to the size for the media you are using.



4. Load media into the tray face up.

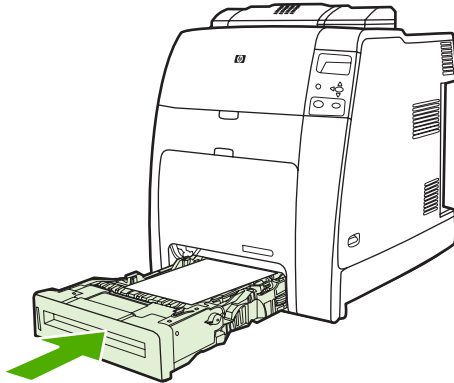


NOTE For best performance, load the tray completely full without splitting or fanning the ream of paper. Splitting or fanning the ream might cause a multi-feed problem, which could result in a paper jam. The capacity of the paper tray can vary. For example, if you are using 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper, the tray holds a full ream of 500 sheets. If the media is heavier than 75 g/m² (20 lb), the tray will not hold a full ream, and you must reduce the number of sheets accordingly. Do not overfill the tray because the printer might not pick up the paper.

NOTE If the tray is not properly adjusted, the printer might display an error message or the media might jam.

NOTE If you are duplex printing, see [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#) for loading instructions.

5. Insert the tray into the printer. The printer will display the tray's media type and size. If the configuration is not correct, press the ✓ key when the printer prompts you to configure the tray for type and size. (For more information see [Configuring a tray when loading paper.](#))



6. If the configuration is correct, press ➡ to clear the message.

Loading undetectable standard-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays



CAUTION If paper is loaded in Trays 3 through 6 when the printer is in sleep mode, the new paper will not be sensed when the printer comes out of sleep mode. This could cause the wrong paper to be used for a print job. Be sure to wake the printer before loading paper in these trays.

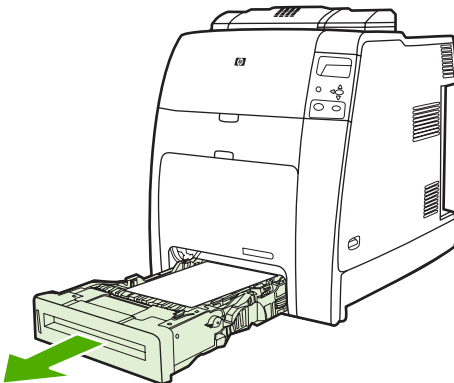
Undetectable standard-sized media sizes are not marked in the tray, but are listed in the **Size** menu for the tray.

The following undetectable standard-sized media is supported in the 500-sheet trays: executive (JIS), 8.5 x 13, double Japan postcard, and 16K.

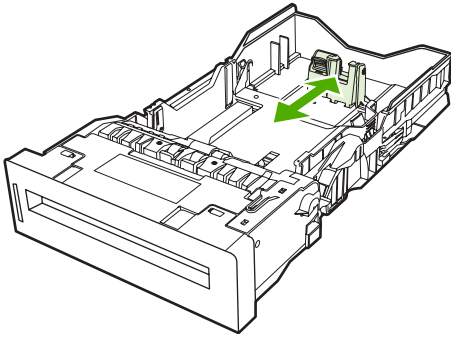


CAUTION Do not print cardstock, envelopes, heavy or extra heavy paper, or unsupported sizes of media from the 500-sheet trays. Print on these types of media only from Tray 1. Do not overfill the input tray or open it while it is in use. Doing so can cause paper jams.

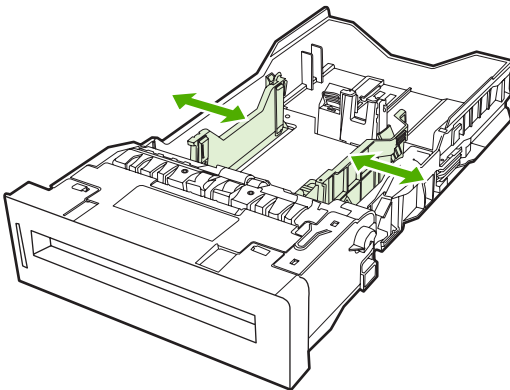
1. Remove the tray from the printer.



2. Adjust the rear media-length guide by squeezing the guide adjustment latch and sliding the back of the tray to the length of the media being used.



3. Slide the media-width guides open to the size for the media you are using.



4. Load media into the tray face up.

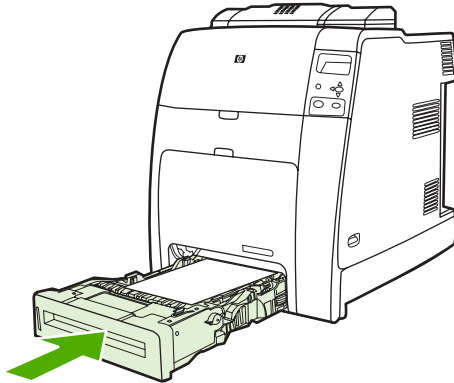


NOTE For best performance, load the tray completely full without splitting or fanning the ream of paper. Splitting or fanning the ream might cause a multi-feed problem, which could result in a paper jam. The capacity of the paper tray can vary. For example, if you are using 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper, the tray holds a full ream of 500 sheets. If the media is heavier than 75 g/m² (20 lb), the tray will not hold a full ream, and you must reduce the number of sheets accordingly. Do not overfill the tray because the printer might not pick up the paper.

NOTE If the tray is not properly adjusted, the printer might display an error message or the media might jam.

NOTE If you are duplex printing, see [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#) for loading instructions.

5. Insert the tray into the printer. The printer will display the tray's media type and size. If the configuration is not correct, press the ✓ key when the printer prompts you to configure the tray for type and size. (For more information, see [Configuring a tray when loading paper.](#))

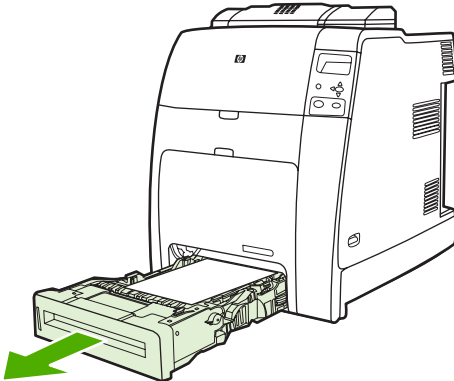


6. If the configuration is correct, press ➡ to clear the message.

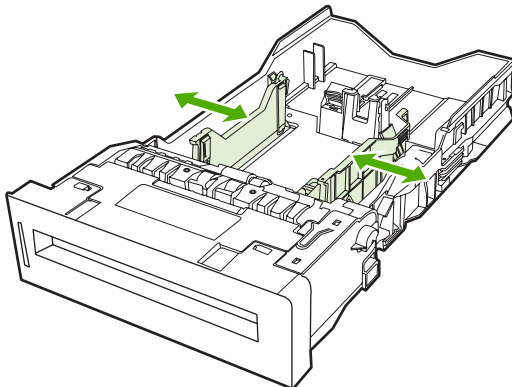
Loading custom-sized media into Tray 2 and optional trays

To use custom media, you must change the size setting on the control panel to **CUSTOM** and set the unit of measure, X dimension, and Y dimension. See [Configuring a tray to match print job settings](#) for more information.

1. Remove tray from the printer.



2. Slide the media width guides all the way open and adjust the rear media-length guide to the length of the paper being used.



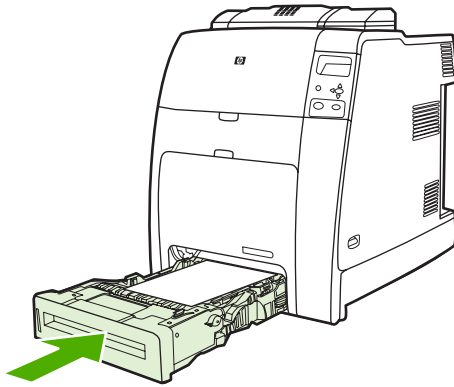
3. Load media into the tray face up.



NOTE For best performance, load the tray completely full without splitting or fanning the ream of paper. Splitting or fanning the ream might cause a multi-feed problem, which could result in a paper jam. The capacity of the paper tray can vary. For example, if you are using 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper, the tray holds a full ream of 500 sheets. If the media is heavier than 75 g/m² (20 lb), the tray will not hold a full ream, and you must reduce the number of sheets accordingly. Do not overfill the tray because the printer might not pick up the paper.

NOTE If you are duplex printing, see [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#) for loading instructions.

4. Slide the media width guides in making sure that they gently touch the paper. Insert the tray into the printer.
5. Insert the tray into the printer. The printer will display the tray's type and size configuration. To specify custom dimensions, or if the type is not correct, press ✓ and follow the prompts. To enter specific dimensions or change the size selection from **ANY CUSTOM** to **CUSTOM**, see [Configuring a tray to match print job settings](#).



6. If the configuration is correct, press ↵ to clear the message.

Printing on special media

Use these guidelines when printing on special types of media.



NOTE Special media such as envelopes, transparencies, custom-size paper, or heavy media greater than 120 g/m² is used in Tray 1.

To print on any special media, use the following procedure:

1. Load the media in the paper tray.
2. When the printer prompts you for the paper type, select the correct media type for the paper loaded in the tray. For example, select **GLOSSY** when loading HP Color Laser Glossy Photo Paper.
3. In the software application or the printer driver, set the media type to match the media type that is loaded in the paper tray.



NOTE For the best print quality, always verify that the media type selected on the printer control panel and the media type selected in the application or printer driver match the type of media loaded in the tray.

Transparencies

When printing on transparencies, use the following guidelines:

- Handle transparencies using the edges. Oils from your fingers deposited on the transparency can cause print quality problems.
- Use only overhead transparencies recommended for use in this printer. Hewlett-Packard recommends using HP Color Laser Transparencies. HP products are designed to work together for optimum printing results.
- In either the software application or the driver, select **TRANSPARENCY** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for transparencies.

For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).



CAUTION Transparencies not designed for LaserJet printing might melt in the printer or wrap around the fuser, causing damage to the printer.

Glossy paper

- In either the software application or the driver, select **GLOSSY**, **HEAVY GLOSSY**, or **EXTRA HEAVY GLOSSY** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for glossy paper.
- Use the control panel to set the media type to **GLOSSY** for the input tray being used.
- Because this affects all print jobs, it is important to return the printer to its original settings once the job has printed. See [Configuring input trays](#) for more information.



NOTE Hewlett-Packard recommends using HP Color Laser Glossy Photo Paper and soft glossy papers designed for use in HP color laser printers. HP products are designed to work together for optimum printing results. If other types of glossy media are used, print quality could be compromised.

Colored paper

- Colored paper should be of the same high quality as white xerographic paper.
- Pigments used in colored media must be able to withstand the printer's fusing temperature of 190° C (374°F) for 0.1 second without deterioration.
- The printer creates colors by printing patterns of dots, overlaying and varying their spacing to produce various colors. Varying the shade or color of the paper will affect the shades of the printed colors.

Envelopes



NOTE Envelopes can be printed only from Tray 1. Set the tray's media size to the specific envelope size. See [Printing envelopes from Tray 1](#).

Adhering to the following guidelines will help ensure proper printing on envelopes and help prevent printer jams:

- Do not load more than 20 envelopes into Tray 1.
- The weight rating of envelopes should not exceed 90 g/m² (24 lb bond).
- Envelopes should be flat.
- Do not use envelopes with windows or clasps.
- Envelopes must not be wrinkled, nicked, or otherwise damaged.
- Envelopes with peel-off adhesive strips must use adhesives that can withstand the heat and pressures of the printer's fusing process.
- Envelopes should be loaded face-down and with the postage end feeding into the printer first.

Labels



NOTE For printing labels, set the tray's media type to **LABELS** in the printer control panel. See [Configuring input trays](#). When printing labels, use the following guidelines:

- Verify that the labels' adhesive material can tolerate temperatures of 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second.
- Verify that there is no exposed adhesive material between the labels. Exposed areas can cause labels to peel off during printing, which can cause printer jams. Exposed adhesive can also cause damage to printer components.
- Do not re-feed a sheet of labels.
- Verify that the labels lie flat.
- Do not use labels that are wrinkled, bubbled, or otherwise damaged.

Heavy paper

The following heavy paper types can be used with the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer.

Paper type	Paper weight
Heavy and extra-heavy stock	105-163 g/m ² 28-43 lb
Cardstock	164-220 g/m ² 43-58 lb
Intermediate	90-105 g/m ² 24-28 lb
HP Tough paper	5 mil

When printing on heavy paper types, use the following guidelines:

- Use Tray 1 for paper that is heavier than 120 g/m² (32 lb).
- For optimum results when printing on heavy paper, use the printer control panel to set the media type for the tray to **HEAVY**.
- In either the software application or the driver, select **Heavy** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for heavy paper.
- Because this setting affects all print jobs, it is important to return the printer back to its original settings once the job has printed. See [Configuring input trays](#).



CAUTION In general, do not use paper that is heavier than the media specification recommended for this printer. Doing so can cause misfeeds, paper jams, reduced print quality, and excessive mechanical wear.

HP LaserJet Tough paper

When printing on HP LaserJet Tough paper, use the following guidelines:

- Handle HP LaserJet Tough paper only by the edges. Oils from your fingers deposited on HP LaserJet Tough paper can cause print quality problems.
- Use only HP LaserJet Tough paper with this printer. HP products are designed to work together for optimum printing results.
- In either the software application or the driver, select **TOUGH PAPER** as the media type, or print from a tray that is configured for HP LaserJet Tough paper.

Preprinted forms and letterhead

Observe the following guidelines for best results with preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Forms and letterhead must be printed with heat-resistant inks that will not melt, vaporize, or release undesirable emissions when subjected to the printer's fusing temperature of approximately 190°C (374°F) for 0.1 second.
- Inks must be non-flammable and should not adversely affect any printer rollers.

- Forms and letterhead should be sealed in a moisture-proof wrapping to prevent changes during storage.
- Before loading preprinted paper such as forms and letterhead, verify that the ink on the paper is dry. During the fusing process, wet ink can come off of preprinted paper.
- To load pre-printed forms and letterhead into Tray 1, load them face down with the top edge of the page facing toward you.
- To load pre-printed forms and letterhead into Tray 2 or an optional tray, load them face up with the top edge of the page facing away from you.
- When duplex printing, load pre-printed forms and letterhead into Tray 2 or an optional 500-sheet tray face down with the top edge of the page towards you.

Recycled paper

This printer supports the use of recycled paper. Recycled paper must meet the same specifications as standard paper. Hewlett-Packard recommends that recycled paper contain no more than 5% ground wood.

Using features in the printer driver

When you print from a software program, many of the product features are available from the printer driver. For complete information about the features that are available in the printer driver, see the printer-driver Help. The following features are described in this section:

- [Creating and using quick sets](#)
- [Creating and using watermarks](#)
- [Resizing documents](#)
- [Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver](#)
- [Using different paper/covers](#)
- [Printing a blank first page](#)
- [Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper](#)
- [Printing on both sides of the paper](#)
- [Setting the stapling options](#)
- [Setting the color options](#)
- [Using the HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box](#)
- [Using the Services tab](#)



NOTE Settings in the printer driver and software program generally override control-panel settings. Software-program settings generally override printer-driver settings.

Creating and using quick sets

Use quick sets to save the current driver settings for reuse. For example, you can save the page orientation, print on both sides, and paper source settings in a quick set. Quick sets are available on most printer-driver tabs. You can save up to 25 Print Task Quick Sets.



NOTE The printer driver might report that 25 Print Task Quick Sets have been defined when fewer than 25 are visible. Some predefined Print Task Quick Sets, which do not apply to your product, might be included and are counted in the total number.

To create a quick set

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Select the print settings that you want to use.
3. In the **Print Task Quick Sets** box, type a name for the selected settings (for example "Quarterly Report" or "My Project Status").
4. Click **Save**.

To use quick sets

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Select the quick set that you want to use from the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down list.
3. Click **OK**. The product is now set to print according to the saved settings in the quick set.



NOTE To restore printer-driver default settings, select **Default Print Settings** from the **Print Task Quick Sets** drop-down list.

Creating and using watermarks

A watermark is a notice, such as "Confidential," that is printed in the background of each page of a document.

To use an existing watermark

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. From the **Effects** tab, click the **Watermarks** drop-down list.
3. Click the watermark that you want to use.
4. If you want the watermark to appear only on the first page of the document, click **First Page Only**.
5. Click **OK**. The product is now set to print the watermark that you have selected.

To remove the watermark, click **(none)** in the **Watermarks** drop-down list.

Resizing documents

Use the document resizing options to scale a document to a percentage of its normal size. You can also choose to print a document on a different size paper, with or without scaling.

To reduce or enlarge a document

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Effects** tab, type the percentage by which you want to reduce or enlarge your document.
You can also use the scroll bar to adjust the reduce or enlarge percentage.
3. Click **OK**. The product is now set to scale the document to the reduce or enlarge percentage that you selected.

To print a document onto a different paper size

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Effects** tab, click **Print Document On**.
3. Select the target paper size to print on.
4. To print the document on the target paper size without scaling it to fit, make sure that the **Scale to Fit** option is *not* selected.
5. Click **OK**. The product is now set to print the document as you specified.

Setting a custom paper size from the printer driver

To set a custom paper size

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Paper** or **Paper/Quality** tab, click **Custom**.
3. On the **Custom Paper Size** window, type the name of the custom paper size.
4. Type the paper-size length and width. If you type a size that is too small or too large, the driver automatically adjusts the size to the minimum or maximum size that is allowed.
5. If necessary, click the button to change the unit of measure between millimeters and inches.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Click **Close**. The product is now set to print the document on the custom-size paper that you selected. The name that you saved appears in the paper-size list for future use.

Using different paper/covers

Follow these instructions for printing a first page that is different from other pages in the print job.

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Paper** or **Paper/Quality** tab, select the appropriate paper for the first page of the print job.
3. Click **Use Different Paper/Covers**.
4. In the list box, click the pages or covers that you want to print on different paper.
5. To print front or back covers, you must also select **Add Blank or Preprinted Cover**.
6. Select the appropriate paper type or source for the other pages of the print job. The product is now set to print the document on the paper that you selected.



NOTE The paper size must be the same for all pages of the print job.

Printing a blank first page

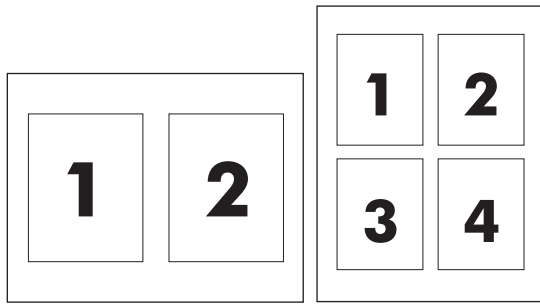
To print a blank first page

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Paper** or **Paper/Quality** tab, click **Use Different Paper/Covers**.
3. In the list box, click **Front Cover**.
4. Click **Add Blank or Preprinted Cover**.

Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature is available in some drivers and provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.

To print more than one page on a sheet of paper, look for a layout or pages-per-sheet option in the driver. (This is sometimes called 2-up, 4-up, or n-up printing.)



To print multiple pages on one sheet of paper

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Click the **Finishing** tab.
3. In the section for **Document Options**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
4. If the number of pages is greater than 1, select the correct options for **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**.
 - Click **Print Page Borders** if you want to print a border around each page on the sheet.
 - Click **Page Order** to select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
5. Click **OK**. The product is now set to print the number of pages per sheet that you have selected.

Printing on both sides of the paper

When a duplex printing accessory is installed, you can automatically print on both sides of a page. If a duplex printing accessory is not installed, you can manually print on both sides of a page by feeding the paper through the product a second time.



NOTE In the printer driver, **Print on Both Sides (manually)** is available only when no duplex printing accessory is installed in the product or when the duplex printing accessory does not support the type of print media being used.

To print on both sides by using the duplex-printing accessory

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with front side down, and the top edge at the back of the tray.



CAUTION Do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb bond). This could lead to a Paper Jam in the printer.

2. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).

3. For Windows, on the **Finishing** tab, click **Print on Both Sides**.
4. Click **OK**. The product is now ready to print on both sides of the paper.

To print on both sides manually

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up, bottom-edge first.
 - For all other trays, load letterhead paper with front side down, and the top edge at the back of the tray.

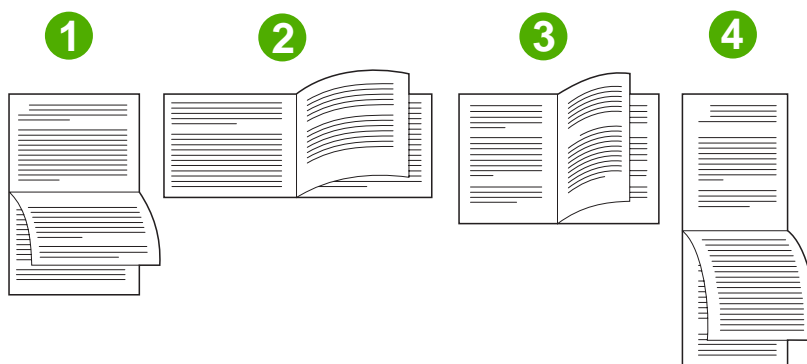


CAUTION Do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28 lb bond). Jamming could result.

2. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
3. On the **Finishing** tab, select **Print on Both Sides (manually)**.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Send the print job to the product.
6. Go to the product. Remove any blank paper that is in tray 1. Insert the printed stack with the printed side up, and the bottom-edge feeding into the product first. You must print the second side from tray 1. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears before feeding the output stack back into Tray 1 for printing the second half.
7. A prompt might appear on the control-panel display that instructs you to press a button to continue.

Layout options for printing on both sides

The four duplex orientation options are shown below. To select option 1 or 4, select **Flip Pages Up** in the printer driver.



1. Long-edge landscape

This layout is often used in accounting, data processing, and spreadsheet programs. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.

2. Short-edge landscape	Each printed image is oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the left page, then from top to bottom on the right page.
3. Long-edge portrait	This is the default setting, and the most common layout used, with every printed image oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the first page, then from top to bottom on the second page.
4. Short-edge portrait	This layout is often used with clipboards. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.

Setting the stapling options

You can select whether a job is stapled by using the printer driver.

To set the stapling options

1. Open the printer-driver properties, and click the **Configure** tab. (The **Configure** tab is not available from within software programs.)



NOTE The procedure to open the printer-driver properties depends on the operating system that you are using. For information about opening the printer-driver properties for your operating system, see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#). Look for the column titled "To change the configuration settings".

2. In the area for configuring additional output devices, select the stapler/stacker, and then click **OK**.
3. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
4. Click the **Output** tab.
5. In the **Staple** box, select the stapling option that you want to use for the print job.
6. Click **OK**. The product is now set to use the stapling option that you selected.

Setting the color options

Options on the **Color** tab control how colors are interpreted and printed from software programs. You can choose either **Automatic** or **Manual** color options. For more information, see [Managing printer color options on Windows computers](#).

- Select **Automatic** to optimize the color and halftone used for each element in a document (such as text, graphics, and photographs). The **Automatic** setting provides additional color options for applications and operating systems that support color-management systems. This setting is recommended for printing all color documents.
- Select **Manual** to manually adjust the color and halftone modes for text, graphics, and photographs. If you are using a PCL driver, you can adjust the RGB data. If you are using the PS driver, you can adjust RGB or CMYK data.

To set the color options

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Select the **Color** tab.
3. In the **Color Options** area, select the option that you want to use.
4. If you selected **Manual**, click **Settings** to open the **Color Settings** dialog box. Adjust the individual settings for text, graphics, and photographs. You can also adjust the general printing settings. Click **OK**.
5. In the **Color Themes** area, select the **RGB Color** option that you want to use.
6. Click **OK**. The product is now set to use the color options that you selected.

Using the HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box

HP Digital Imaging Options make it easy for you to get better photos and images.



NOTE HP Digital Imaging Options are available for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

The following options are available on the **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box:

- **Contrast Enhancement:** Automatically enhance colors and contrast for washed-out photos. Click **Automatic** to allow the printer software to intelligently brighten your photo, focusing only on areas that need adjustment.
- **Digital Flash:** Adjust the exposure in dark areas of photos to bring out detail. Click **Automatic** to allow the printer software to balance lightness and darkness automatically.
- **SmartFocus:** Enhance the image quality and clarity of low resolution images such as those downloaded from the Internet. Click **On** to allow the printer software to sharpen details in the image automatically.
- **Sharpness:** Adjust the image sharpness to your preference. Click **Automatic** to allow the printer software to set the level of sharpening for the image automatically.
- **Smoothing:** Soften an image. Click **Automatic** to allow the printer software to set the level of smoothing for the image automatically.

Opening the HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box

1. Open the **Printer Properties** dialog box.
2. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab, and then click the **HP Digital Imaging** button.



NOTE If you installed the HP Image Zone software, you can use it to edit and further enhance digital photos.

Using the Services tab



NOTE The **Services** tab is available for Windows XP.

If the product is connected to a network, use the **Services** tab to obtain product and supply-status information. Click the **Device and Supplies status icon** to open the **Device Status** page of the HP Embedded Web Server. This page shows the current status of the product, the percentage of life remaining for each supply, and information for ordering supplies.

Using features in the Macintosh printer driver

When you print from a software program, many of the printer features are available from the printer driver. For complete information about the features that are available in the printer driver, see the printer-driver Help. The following features are described in this section:

- [Creating and using presets in Mac OS X](#)
- [Printing a cover page](#)
- [Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper](#)
- [Printing on both sides of the paper](#)
- [Setting the color options](#)



NOTE Settings in the printer driver and software program generally override control-panel settings. Software-program settings generally override printer-driver settings.

Creating and using presets in Mac OS X

Use presets to save the current driver settings for reuse. For example, you can save the page orientation, print-on-both-sides feature, and paper-type settings in a preset.

To create a preset

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Select the print settings that you want to use.
3. In the **Presets** box, click **Save As...**, and type a name for the preset (for example "Quarterly Report" or "My Project Status").
4. Click **OK**.

To use presets

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. In the **Presets** menu, select the preset that you want to use.



NOTE To restore printer-driver default settings, select **Standard** from the **Presets** pop-up menu.

Printing a cover page

If you want to, you can print a separate cover page for your document that includes a message (such as "Confidential").

To print a cover page

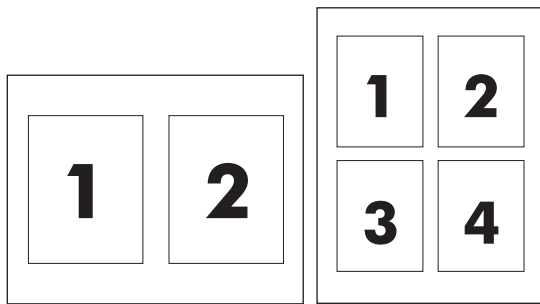
1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. On the **Cover Page** or **Paper/Quality** pop-up menu, select whether to print the cover page **Before Document** or **After Document**.
3. If you are using Mac OS X, in the **Cover Page Type** pop-up menu, select the message that you want to print on the cover page.



NOTE To print a blank cover page, select **Standard** as the **Cover Page Type**.

Printing multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.



To print multiple pages on one sheet of paper

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Click the **Layout** pop-up menu.
3. Next to **Pages per Sheet**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
4. If the number of pages is greater than 1, next to **Layout Direction**, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
5. Next to **Borders**, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.

Printing on both sides of the paper

When a duplex printing accessory is installed, you can automatically print on both sides of a page. If a duplex printing accessory is not installed, you can manually print on both sides of a page by feeding the paper through the printer a second time.

To print on both sides by using the duplex-printing accessory

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up and the bottom-edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down and the top edge at the back of the tray.



CAUTION Do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond). Jamming might result.

2. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
3. Open the **Layout** pop-up menu.
4. Next to **Two Sided Printing**, select either **Long-Edge Binding** or **Short-Edge Binding**.
5. Click **Print**.

To print on both sides manually

1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper with the front side up and the bottom-edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper with the front side down, and the top edge at the back of the tray.



CAUTION Do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond). Jamming might result.

2. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
3. On the **Finishing** pop-up menu, select the **Manual Duplex** option.



NOTE If the **Manual Duplex** option is not enabled, select **Manually Print on 2nd Side**.

4. Click **Print**.
5. Go to the printer. Remove any blank paper that is in tray 1. Insert the printed stack with the printed side up and the bottom-edge feeding into the printer first. You must print the second side from tray 1. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears before replacing the output stack in tray 1 for printing the second half.
6. If a prompt appears on the control-panel display, press a control-panel button to continue.

Setting the color options

Use the **Color Options** pop-up menu to control how colors are interpreted and printed from software programs.



NOTE For more information about using the color options, see [Managing printer color options on Macintosh computers](#).

To set the color options

1. Open the printer driver (see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#)).
2. Open the **Color Options** pop-up menu.
3. If you are using Mac OS X, click **Show Advanced Options**.
4. Manually adjust the individual settings for text, graphics, and photographs.

Two-sided (duplex) printing

Some printer models are capable of duplex printing (printing on both sides of a page). To find out which models support automatic duplexing, see [Printer basics](#). All printer models support manual duplexing.



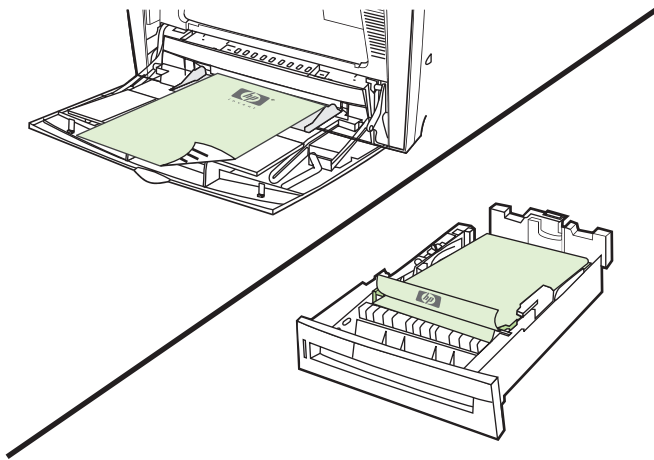
NOTE You must specify two-sided printing options in your software application or in the printer driver in order to print on both sides of the page. If this option is not visible in the software application or printer driver, use the following information to make duplex printing options available.

To use two-sided printing:

- Verify that the printer driver is configured to show the two-sided printing options: automatic and/or manual. For instructions, see the online Help for the printer driver. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).
- Once the two-sided printing option is shown, select the appropriate two-sided printing options in the printer driver software. Two-sided printing options include page and binding orientation. For more information about options for binding two-sided printing jobs, see [Options for binding two-sided printing jobs](#).
- Automatic two-sided printing is not supported for certain media types, including transparencies, envelopes, labels, heavy, extra heavy, cardstock, and HP Tough paper. (The maximum weight paper for automatic duplex printing is 120 g/m² (32 lb) bond.)
- Automatic two-sided printing supports letter, A4, 8.5 x 13, legal, executive, and JIS B5 paper sizes.
- Manual two-sided printing can support all sizes and more types of media. (Transparencies, envelopes, and labels are not supported.)
- If both automatic and manual two-sided printing are enabled, the printer will automatically print on two sides if the size and type are supported by the duplexer. Otherwise, it will manually duplex.
- For best results, avoid two-sided printing with rough-textured, heavy-weight media.
- To load pre-printed forms and letterhead into Tray 1, load them face up with the top edge of the page facing away from you.
- When duplex printing, load pre-printed forms and letterhead into Tray 2 or an optional 500-sheet tray face down with the top edge of the page towards you.



NOTE Loading paper for duplexing is different than loading for one-sided printing.



Control panel settings for automatic two-sided printing

Many software applications allow you to change two-sided print settings. If your software application or printer driver does not allow you to adjust two-sided printing settings, you can adjust these settings through the control panel. The factory default setting is **OFF**.



CAUTION Do not use two-sided printing when printing on labels. Serious damage could result.

To enable or disable two-sided printing from the printer control panel



NOTE Changing settings for two-sided printing through the printer control panel affects all print jobs. Whenever possible, change settings for two-sided printing through your software application or printer driver.

NOTE Any changes made in the printer driver will override settings made using the printer control panel.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **✓** to select **PRINTING**.
5. Press **▼** to highlight **DUPLEX**.
6. Press **✓** to select **DUPLEX**.
7. Press **▲** or **▼** to select **ON** to enable two-sided printing or **OFF** to disable automatic two-sided printing.
8. Press **✓** to set the value.
9. Press **Menu**.
10. Select two-sided printing from your software application or printer driver, if possible.



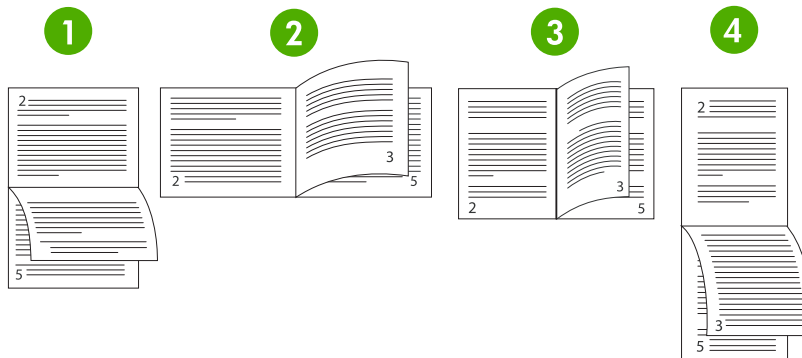
NOTE To select two-sided printing from the printer driver, the driver must first be properly configured. For instructions, see the online Help for the printer driver. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

Options for binding two-sided printing jobs

Before printing a two-sided document, use the printer driver to choose the edge on which you will bind your finished document. Long-edge or book binding is the conventional layout used in book binding. Short-edge or tablet binding is the typical calendar binding.



NOTE The default binding setting is to bind on the long edge when the page is set up for portrait orientation. To change to long-edge binding, click the **Flip Pages Up** check box.



1	Long-edge landscape ¹	This layout is often used in accounting, data processing, and spreadsheet programs. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.
2	Short-edge landscape	Each printed image is oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the left page, then from top to bottom on the right page.
3	Long-edge portrait	This is the default printer setting, and the most common layout used, with every printed image oriented right-side-up. Facing pages are read from top to bottom on the left page, then from top to bottom on the right page.
4	Short-edge portrait ¹	This layout is often used with clipboards. Every other printed image is oriented upside-down. Facing pages are read continuously from top to bottom.

¹ When using Windows drivers, select **Flip Pages** to see the designated binding options.

Manual two-sided printing

If you want to print on two sides (duplex) on paper other than the supported sizes or weights (for example, paper heavier than 120 g/m² (32 lb) or very thin paper), you will have to go to the printer and reinsert the paper manually after the first side has printed.



NOTE Damaged or previously used paper can cause paper jams and should not be used.

NOTE Manual two-sided printing is not supported for Windows 98 and systems that use the PS driver.

To manually print on two sides (duplex)

1. Ensure that the printer driver is configured to allow manual duplexing. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#). In the printer driver, select **Allow Manual Duplex**.
2. From the application, open the printer driver.
3. Select the appropriate size and type.
4. On the **Finishing** tab, click **Print on Both Sides** or **Print on Both Sides (Manually)**.
5. The default binding option is to bind on the long edge of the paper in portrait layout. To change the setting, click the **Finishing** tab, and select the **Flip pages up** checkbox.
6. Click **OK**. The **Print on Both Sides** instructions will appear. Follow the instructions to finish printing your document.



NOTE If the total number of sheets to be duplexed exceeds the Tray 1 capacity for manual duplex jobs, feed the top 100 sheets and press ✓. When prompted, feed the next 100 sheets and press ✓. Repeat as necessary until all the sheets from the output stack have been loaded into Tray 1.

For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

Printing booklets

Some versions of the printer driver let you control the printing of booklets when duplexing. You can select binding on the left or right side on letter, legal, or A4 paper size. Windows 2000 and XP supports booklet printing for all paper sizes.

See the printer driver online Help for more information about the printing booklets feature.

Using the stapler/stacker

The optional stapler/stacker incorporates an inline stapler and stacker that provides automatic job separation with job offset capability.

The stapler/stacker can handle paper ranging in weight from 60 to 220 g/m² (16 to 58 lb). The stapler/stacker output bin can hold up to 750 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper with job offset. Standard and custom paper sizes are accepted, but only letter, A4, JIS B5, 215.9 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in), and legal size paper can be stapled. For more information about supported paper, see [Supported media weights and sizes](#).



NOTE Actual stapler/stacker capacity might vary depending on the media type and weight, environmental conditions, and other factors.

The maximum number of sheets that can be stapled in a single job varies according to the weight and type of the paper that is used.

- Jobs containing up to 30 sheets of paper weighing from 60 to 160 g/m² (16 to 42 lb) can be stapled.
- Jobs containing up to 20 sheets of paper weighing from 160 to 220 g/m² (42 to 58 lb) can be stapled.
- Jobs containing up to 20 sheets of heavy papers, such as HP Tough Paper and HP High-Gloss laser paper, can be stapled.
- If a job consists of only one sheet or more than 30 sheets, the job is printed to the output bin, but is not stapled.



NOTE The stapler supports paper only. Do not try to staple other media, such as envelopes, transparencies, or labels.

To staple a print job, select the stapler in the application. You can usually select the stapler in the application or printer driver, although some options might be available only in the printer driver. You might need to configure the printer driver to recognize the stapler/stacker. You need to set this setting only once.

If you cannot select the stapler in the program or printer driver, select the stapler at the printer control panel.

Configuring the printer driver to recognize the stapler/stacker

Windows

1. Open the **Printers** folder.
2. Select HP Color LaserJet 4700.
3. On the **File** menu, click on **Properties**.
4. Select the **Device Settings** tab.
5. Use either of the following methods to select the stapler/stacker:
 - Scroll down to **Automatic Configuration**, select **Update Now**, and click **Apply**.
 - Scroll down to **Accessory Output Bin**, select **HP 750–Sheet Stapler/Stacker**, and click **Apply**.

Macintosh

1. Open the **Printer Center** utility.
2. Select HP Color LaserJet 4700.
3. On the **File** menu, click on **Show Info (X + I)**.
4. Select the **Installable Options** tab.
5. Scroll to **Accessory Output Bins** and select **HP 750–Sheet Stapler/Stacker**.
6. Click on **Apply Changes**.

Selecting the printer behavior at staples out

When the stapler cartridge runs out of staples, jobs will print to the stapler/stacker if the stapler is configured to **CONTINUE**. If the stapler is configured to **STOP** when the stapler cartridge is empty, the printer stops printing any jobs until the cartridge is replaced. For more information, see [Stapler/stacker menu](#).

1. Press **Menu** to enter the menus.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press ✓
3. Press ▼ to highlight **STAPLER STACKER**, and then press ✓.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **STAPLES OUT**, and then press ✓.
5. Press ▼ to highlight **STOP** or **CONTINUE**, and then press ✓.

Printing to the stapler/stacker

The stapler/stacker can hold up to 750 sheets of 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper with job offset. Standard and custom paper sizes are accepted, but only letter, A4, JIS Exec, 215.9 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in), and legal size paper can be stapled. For more information about supported paper and general information about stapling, see [Supported media weights and sizes](#) and [Using the stapler/stacker](#).



NOTE Actual stapler/stacker capacity might vary depending on the media type and weight, environmental conditions, and other factors.

To print to the stapler/stacker, select the option in the software application or in the printer driver, or at the printer control panel.



NOTE Using media that does not meet HP specifications might cause problems that could require repair. This repair is not covered by your printer warranty or service agreements.

Selecting the stapler in an application

Windows

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print**, and then click **Properties**
2. On the **Output** tab, click the drop-down list under **Staple**, and click **One Staple**.

Macintosh

1. On the **File** menu, click **Print (Command + P)**.
2. Select the **Finishing** option.
3. For the **Output** destination, select **Stapler**.
4. In the **Finishing** option, select **1 Staple**.

Selecting the stapler at the control panel

1. Press **Menu** to enter the menus.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press ✓.
3. Press ▼ to highlight **STAPLER STACKER**, and then press ✓.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **STAPLES**, and then press ✓.
5. Press ▼ to highlight **1-EDGE**, and then press ✓.



NOTE Selecting the stapler at the printer control panel changes the default setting to **STAPLE**. It is possible that all print jobs might be stapled. However, settings that are changed in the printer driver override settings that are changed at the control panel.

NOTE When configuring to **STAPLES = 1-EDGE**, the **OFFSET** menu is set to **DISABLED**. Jobs cannot be both stapled and offset.

Job offset

When the job offset feature is enabled, the stapler/stacker offsets each print job for easy identification. Letter, A4, JIS B5, 215.9 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 in), and legal size paper can be offset.

The job offset option is configured only from the printer control panel. It cannot be activated through the printer driver. Once this feature is configured, all subsequent print jobs are offset.



NOTE A print job can be either stapled or offset. If job offset is configured at the control panel but not in the printer driver, the job is offset. If offset is configured at the control panel but the printer driver is configured to staple the job, the printed document is stapled, and the offset feature is overridden.

Configuring job offset at the control panel

1. Press **Menu** to enter the menus.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**, and then press ✓.
3. Press ▼ to highlight **STAPLER STACKER**, and then press ✓.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **OFFSET**, and then press ✓.
5. Press ▼ to highlight **ENABLED**, and then press ✓.

Paper orientation when a stapler/stacker is installed

When the stapler/stacker is installed, the printer automatically rotates printed images 180° on all paper sizes, regardless of whether the job is stapled or not. If you are printing on paper that requires a specific orientation, such as letterhead, preprinted or prepunched paper, or paper with watermarks, make sure that the paper is loaded correctly in the tray.

For single-sided printing and stapling from Tray 1, load the paper face down with the logo toward you. For single-sided printing and stapling from all other trays, load the paper face up with the logo toward the rear of the printer.

For duplex printing and stapling from Tray 1, load the paper face up with the logo toward the rear of the printer. For duplex printing and stapling from all other trays, load the paper face down with the logo toward you.

Special printing situations

Use these guidelines when printing on special types of media.

Printing a different first page

Use the following procedure to print the first page of a document on a different media type than the rest of the document, for example, to print the first page of a document on letterhead paper and the rest on plain paper.

1. From your application or printer driver, specify a tray for the first page and another tray for the remaining pages.

For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

2. Load the special media into the tray that you specified in step 1.
3. Load the media for the remaining pages of the document into another tray.

You can also print on different media by using the printer control panel or printer driver to set the types of media that are loaded in the trays and then selecting the first and remaining pages by media type.

Printing a blank back cover

Use the following procedure to print a blank back cover. You can also select an alternate paper source or print on a different media type than the rest of the document.

1. On the printer driver's **Paper** tab, select **Use different paper**, then from the drop-down list, select **Back Cover**, check **Add a blank back cover**, and then click **OK**.
2. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

You can also select an alternate paper source or print a blank back cover on a different media type than the rest of the document. If desired, select a different source and type from the drop-down lists.

Printing on custom-size media

The printer supports single-sided printing on custom-size media. Tray 1 supports media sizes from 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches). Tray 2 and the optional 500-sheet trays support media sizes from 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 inches) (A5 size) to 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches).

When printing on custom-size media, if Tray 1 is configured in the printer control panel as **TRAY X TYPE= ANY TYPE** and **TRAY X SIZE= ANY SIZE**, the printer will print on whatever media is loaded in the tray. When printing on custom-size media from Tray 2 or any of the optional paper trays, adjust the switch on the tray to the **CUSTOM** position, and from the control panel, set the media size to **CUSTOM** or **ANY CUSTOM**.

Some software applications and printer drivers allow you to specify custom paper-size dimensions. You can configure custom paper sizes from the printer driver's **Paper** tab or **Forms** tab (Windows 2000 and XP). Be sure to set the correct paper size in both the page setup and print dialog boxes.

For more information about how to access the printer drivers, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

If your software application requires you to calculate margins for custom-size paper, see the online Help for that application.

Stopping a print request

You can stop a print request either from the printer control panel or from your software application. To stop a print request from a computer on a network, see the online Help for the specific network software.



NOTE It may take some time for all printing to clear after you have canceled a print job.

Stopping the current print job from the printer control panel

1. Press **Stop** on the printer control panel to pause the job that is currently printing. The control panel menu provides the option to resume printing or to cancel the current job.
2. Press **Menu** to exit the menu and resume printing.
3. Press **✓** to cancel the job.

Pressing **Stop** does not affect subsequent print jobs that are stored in the printer buffer.

Stopping the current print job from a software application

A dialog box will appear briefly on the control panel display, giving you the option to cancel the print job.

If several requests have been sent to the printer through an application, the print jobs might be waiting in a print queue (for example, in Windows Print Manager). See the application documentation for specific instructions on canceling a print request from the computer.

If a print job is waiting in a print queue (computer memory) or print spooler (Windows 98, 2000, XP, or Me), delete the print job there.

For Windows 98, 2000, XP, or Me, go to **Start, Settings**, and then **Printers**. Double-click the **HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer** icon to open the print spooler. Select the print job you want to cancel, and then press **Delete**. If the print job is not cancelled, you might need to shut down and restart the computer.

Job storage features

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer lets you store a job in the printer's memory for printing at a later time. The job storage features use memory from both the hard disk and random access memory (RAM). These job storage features are described below.

To support job storage features for complex jobs, or if you often print complex graphics, print PostScript (PS) documents, or use many downloaded fonts, HP recommends that you install additional memory. Added memory also gives you more flexibility in supporting job-storage features, such as quick copying.



NOTE To use the Private Job, Proof and Hold, and Mopy features, the printer must have a minimum of 256 MB DDR plus 32 MB of additional memory on the formatter board. To use the quick copy and stored jobs features you must install an optional hard disk in the printer (HP Color LaserJet 4700, 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn models) and properly configure the drivers.



CAUTION Make sure to uniquely identify jobs in the printer driver before printing. Using default names may override previous jobs with the same default name or cause the job to be deleted. For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

Proofing and holding a job

The proof and hold feature provides a quick and easy way to print and proof one copy of a job and then print additional copies. This option stores the print job on the printer hard disk or in printer RAM memory, and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, you can print the remaining copies of the print job from the printer control panel. The number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the printer is set from the printer control panel.

To permanently store the job and prevent the printer from deleting it, select the **Stored Job** option in the driver.

Printing stored jobs

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
RETRIEVE JOB is highlighted.
2. Press **✓** to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
3. Press **▼** to highlight your **USER NAME**.
4. Press **✓** to select your **USER NAME**.
5. Press **▼** to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
6. Press **✓** to select the **JOB NAME**.
PRINT is highlighted.
7. Press **✓** to select **PRINT**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the number of copies.
9. Press **✓** to print the job.

Deleting stored jobs

When you send a stored job, the printer overwrites any previous jobs with the same user and job name. If there is not a job already stored under the same user and job name, and the printer needs additional space, the printer may delete other stored jobs starting with the oldest. The default number of jobs that can be stored is 32. You can change the number of jobs that can be stored from the control panel. For more information about setting the job storage limit, see [Configure device menu](#).

A job can be deleted from the control panel, from the embedded Web server, or from HP Web Jetadmin. To delete a job from the control panel, use the following procedure:

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
RETRIEVE JOB is highlighted.
2. Press **✓** to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
3. Press **▼** to highlight your **USER NAME**.
4. Press **✓** to select your **USER NAME**.
5. Press **▼** to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
6. Press **✓** to select the **JOB NAME**.
7. Press **▼** to highlight **DELETE**.
8. Press **✓** to select **DELETE**.
9. Press **✓** to delete the job.

Private jobs

This option allows you to send a print job directly to the printer memory. Selection of **Private Job** activates the PIN field. The print job can be printed only after you type a PIN in the printer control panel. After the job is printed, the printer removes the job from the printer memory. This feature is useful when you are printing sensitive or confidential documents that you do not want to leave in an output bin after printing. Private Job stores the print job on the hard disk or in printer RAM memory. After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the printer. If more copies are needed, you have to reprint the job from the program. If you send a second private job to the printer with the same user name and job name as an existing private job (and you have not released the original job for printing), the job will overwrite the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted if power to the printer is turned off.



NOTE A lock symbol next to a job name indicates that the job is private.

Specify that a job is private from the driver. Select the **Private Job** option and type a four-digit PIN. To avoid overwriting jobs with the same name, also specify a username and job name.

Printing a private job

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
RETRIEVE JOB is highlighted.
2. Press **✓** to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
3. Press **▼** to highlight your **USER NAME**.

4. Press ✓ to select your **USER NAME**.
5. Press ▼ to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
6. Press ✓ to select the **JOB NAME**.
PRINT is highlighted.
7. Press ✓ to select **PRINT**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN.
9. Press ✓ to select the digit. The number changes to an asterisk.
10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to enter the remaining three digits of the PIN.
11. Press ✓ when finished entering the PIN.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number of copies.
13. Press ✓ to print the job.

Deleting a private job

A private job can be deleted from the printer control panel. You can delete a job without printing it, or it will be automatically deleted after it is printed.

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
RETRIEVE JOB is highlighted.
2. Press ✓ to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
3. Press ▼ to highlight your **USER NAME**.
4. Press ✓ to select your **USER NAME**.
5. Press ▼ to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
6. Press ✓ to select the **JOB NAME**.
7. Press ▼ to highlight **DELETE**.
8. Press ✓ to select **DELETE**.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the first digit of the PIN.
10. Press ✓ to select the digit. The number changes to an asterisk.
11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 to enter the remaining three digits of the PIN.
12. Press ✓ when finished entering the PIN.
13. Press ✓ to delete the job.

Mopier mode

When Mopier mode is enabled, the printer produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases printer performance and reduces network traffic by sending the job to the printer once, then storing it in the printer's RAM. The remainder of the copies are

printed at the printer's fastest speed. Documents can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the desktop, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers support mopying provided they have enough total memory (160 MB DDR plus 32 MB on the formatter board). The mopying feature is enabled by default if the **Mopier Mode** setting is **Enabled** in the **Device Settings** tab.

Storing a print job

You can download a print job to the printer without printing it. You can then print the job at any time through the printer control panel. For example, you might want to download a personnel form, calendar, time sheet, or accounting form that other users can access and print.

To store a print job permanently, select the **Stored Job** option in the driver when printing the job.

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
2. **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted.
3. Press **✓** to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight your **USER NAME**.
5. Press **✓** to select your **USER NAME**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JOB NAME**.
PRINT is highlighted.
8. Press **✓** to select **PRINT**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the number of copies needed.
10. Press **✓** to print the job.

Quick-copying a job

Quick Copy stores a copy of a printed job on the hard disk, and allows you to print additional copies of a print job using the control panel. The number of quick-copy print jobs that can be stored in the printer is set from the printer control panel.

This feature can be turned on or off from the driver.

1. Press **Menu** to enter **MENUS**.
2. **RETRIEVE JOB** is highlighted.
3. Press **✓** to select **RETRIEVE JOB**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight your **USER NAME**.
5. Press **✓** to select your **USER NAME**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight a **JOB NAME**.
7. Press **✓** to select the **JOB NAME**.
PRINT is highlighted.

8. Press ✓ to select **PRINT**.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the number of copies.
10. Press ✓ to print the job.

Managing memory

This printer supports up to 544 MB of memory: 512 MB DDR plus 32 MB of additional memory on the formatter board. You can add additional memory by installing dual data-rate (DDR) memory. To allow for memory expansion, the printer has two DDR slots, which accept 128 or 256 MB of RAM each. For information about installing memory, see [Working with memory and print server cards](#).



NOTE Memory specification: HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers use 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (SODIMM) that support 128 or 256 MB of RAM.

The printer features Memory Enhancement Technology (MEt), which automatically compresses page data to provide the most efficient use of the printer's RAM.

The printer uses DDR SODIMM. Extended data output (EDO) DIMMs are not supported.



NOTE If memory problems occur when you are printing complex graphics, you can make more memory available by removing downloaded fonts, style sheets, and macros from printer memory. Reducing the complexity of a print job from within an application can help avoid memory problems.

5 Managing the printer

This chapter describes how to manage the printer. The following topics are covered:

- [Printer information pages](#)
- [Using the embedded Web server](#)
- [Using the HP Easy Printer Care Software](#)

Printer information pages

From the printer control panel, you can print pages that give details about the printer and its current configuration. The procedures for printing the following information pages are described here:

- Menu map
- Configuration page
- Supplies status page
- Usage page
- Demo page
- Print RGB samples
- Print CMYK samples
- File directory
- PCL or PS font list
- Event log

Menu map

To see the current settings for the menus and items available in the control panel, print a control panel menu map.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. If **PRINT MENU MAP** is not highlighted, press **▲** or **▼** until it is highlighted.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT MENU MAP**.

The message **Printing... MENU MAP** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the menu map. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the menu map.

You might want to store the menu map near the printer for reference. The content of the menu map varies, depending on the options currently installed in the printer. (Many of these values can be overridden from the printer driver or software application.)

For a complete list of control panel menus and possible values, see [Menu hierarchy](#).

Configuration page

Use the configuration page to view current printer settings, to help troubleshoot printer problems, or to verify installation of optional accessories, such as memory (DIMMs), paper trays, and printer languages.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.

4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.

The message **Printing... CONFIGURATION** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the configuration page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the configuration page.



NOTE If the printer is configured with an HP Jetdirect print server or a stapler/stacker, an additional configuration page will print that provides information about those devices.

Supplies status page

The supplies status page illustrates the remaining life for the following printer supplies:

- Print cartridges (all colors)
- Transfer unit
- Fuser

To print the supplies status page:

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press ✓ to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE**.

The message **Printing... SUPPLIES STATUS** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the supplies status page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the supplies status page.



NOTE If you are using non-HP supplies, the supplies status page will not show the remaining life for those supplies. For more information, see [Non-HP print cartridges](#).

Usage page

The usage page lists a page count for each size of media that has passed through the printer. This page count includes the number of pages that were printed on one side, the number that were printed on two sides (duplexed), and totals of the two printing methods for each media size. It also lists the average percentage of page coverage for each color.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press ✓ to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT USAGE PAGE**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT USAGE PAGE**.

The message **Printing... USAGE PAGE** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the usage page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the usage page.

Demo page

A demo page is a representation of a color photograph that demonstrates print quality.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT DEMO**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT DEMO**.

The message **Printing... DEMO PAGE** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the demo page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the demo page.

Print CMYK samples

Use the **PRINT CMYK SAMPLES** page to print CMYK color samples to match the color values in your application.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT CMYK SAMPLES**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT CMYK SAMPLES**.

The message **Printing... CMYK Samples** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the sample pages. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the pages.

Print RGB samples

Use the **PRINT RGB SAMPLES** page to print RGB color samples to match the color values in your application.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT RGB SAMPLES**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT RGB SAMPLES**.

The message **Printing... RGB Samples** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the sample pages. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the pages.

File directory

The file directory page contains information for all installed mass storage devices. This option does not appear if no mass storage devices are installed.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT FILE DIRECTORY**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT FILE DIRECTORY**.

The message **Printing... FILE DIRECTORY** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the file directory page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the file directory page.

PCL or PS font list

Use the font lists to see which fonts are currently installed in the printer. (The font lists also show which fonts are resident on an optional hard disk accessory or flash DIMM.)

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT PCL FONT LIST** or **PRINT PS FONT LIST**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT PCL FONT LIST** or **PRINT PS FONT LIST**.

The message **Printing... FONT LIST** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the font list page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the font list page.

Event log

The event log lists the printer events, including printer jams, service errors, and other printer conditions.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **DIAGNOSTICS**.
3. Press **✓** to select **DIAGNOSTICS**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT EVENT LOG**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT EVENT LOG**.

The message **Printing... EVENT LOG** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the event log. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the event log.

Using the embedded Web server



NOTE When the printer is directly connected to a computer, use the HP Easy Printer Care Software to view the printer status.

When the printer is directly connected to a computer, the embedded Web server is supported for Windows 98 and later.

When the printer is connected to the network, the embedded Web server is automatically available. You can access the embedded Web server from Windows 98 and later, or through the Apple Safari browser.

The embedded Web server allows you to view printer and network status and to manage printing functions from your computer instead of from the printer control panel. Below are examples of what you can do using the embedded Web server:

- View printer control status information.
- Set the type of paper loaded in each tray.
- Determine the remaining life on all supplies and order new ones.
- View and change tray configurations.
- View and change the printer control panel menu configuration.
- View and print internal pages.
- Receive notification of printer and supplies events.
- View and change network configuration.
- Restrict access to color printing. (See <http://www.hp.com/go/coloraccess> for setup instructions.)

To use the embedded Web server, you must have Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later, or Netscape Navigator 6.2 or later. The embedded Web server works when the printer is connected to an IP-based network. The embedded Web server does not support IPX-based printer connections. You do not have to have Internet access to open and use the embedded Web server. For more information about the HP embedded Web server, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*. You can find this guide on the CD-ROM included with the printer.

Accessing the embedded Web server

In a supported Web browser on your computer, type the IP address for the printer. (To find the IP address, print a configuration page. For more information about printing a configuration page, see [Printer information pages](#).)



NOTE Once you open the URL, you can bookmark it so that you can return to it quickly in the future.

1. The embedded Web server has three tabs that contain settings and information about the printer: the **Information** tab, the **Settings** tab, and the **Networking** tab. Click the tab that you want to view.
2. See the following sections for more information about each tab.

Information tab

The Information pages group consists of the following pages.

- **Device Status.** This page displays the printer status and shows the life remaining of HP supplies, with 0% representing that a supply is empty. The page also shows the type and size of print media set for each tray. To change the default settings, click **Change Settings**.
- **Configuration page.** This page shows the information found on the printer configuration page.
- **Supplies Status.** This page shows the life remaining of HP supplies, with 0% representing that a supply is empty. This page also provides supplies part numbers. To order new supplies, click **Order Supplies** in the **Other Links** area on the left side of the window. To visit any Web site, you must have Internet access.
- **Event log.** This page shows a list of all printer events and errors.
- **Usage page.** This page shows a summary of the number of pages the printer has printed, grouped by size and type.
- **Device Information.** This page also shows the printer network name, address, and model information. To change these entries, click **Device Information** on the **Settings** tab.
- **Control panel.** This page shows an image of the text currently appearing on the printer's control panel display.

Settings tab

This tab allows you to configure the printer from your computer. The **Settings** tab can be password protected. If this printer is networked, always consult with the printer administrator before changing settings on this tab.

The **Settings** tab contains the following pages.

- **Configure Device.** Configure all printer settings from this page. This page contains the traditional menus found on printers using a control panel display. These menus include **Information**, **Paper Handling**, and **Configure Device**.
- **Alerts.** Network only. Set up to receive e-mail alerts for various printer and supplies events. Alerts may also be sent to a URL.
- **E-mail.** Network only. Used in conjunction with the Alerts page to set up incoming and outgoing e-mail, as well as to set e-mail alerts.
- **Security.** Set a password that must be entered to gain access to the **Settings** and **Networking** tabs. Enable and disable certain features of the embedded Web server.
- **Other Links.** Add or customize a link to another Web site. This link is displayed in the **Other Links** area on all embedded Web server pages. These permanent links always appear in the **Other Links** area: **HP Instant Support™**, **Order Supplies**, and **Product Support**.
- **Device Information.** Name the printer and assign an asset number to it. Enter the name and e-mail address for the primary contact who will receive information about the printer.
- **Language.** Determine the language in which to display the embedded Web server information.

- **Time Services.** Configure the printer's time settings.
- **Restrict Color.** Set user color print job restrictions. For more information on restricting and reporting color usage, see <http://www.hp.com/go/coloraccess>.

Setting the real-time clock

Use the real-time clock feature to set the date and time settings. The date and time information is attached to stored print jobs, so that you can identify the most recent versions of stored print jobs.

When setting the clock, you can set the date format, date, time format, and time.

Networking tab

This tab allows the network administrator to control network-related settings for the printer when it is connected to an IP-based network. This tab will not appear if the printer is directly connected to a computer, or if the printer is connected to a network using anything other than an HP Jetdirect print server.

Click **Help** on the Networking tab pages for more information on network settings.

Other links

This section contains links that connect you to the Internet to order supplies or obtain product support. You must have Internet access to use any of these links. If you use a dial-up connection and did not connect when you first opened the embedded Web server, you must connect before you can visit these Web sites. Connecting might require that you close the embedded Web server and reopen it.

- **HP Instant Support™.** Connects you to the HP Web site to help you find solutions. This service analyzes your printer error log and configuration information to provide diagnostic and support information specific to your printer.
- **Order Supplies.** Click this link to connect to the HP Web site and order genuine HP supplies, such as print cartridges and paper.
- **Product Support.** Connects to the support site for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer. Then, you can search for help regarding general topics.

Using the HP Easy Printer Care Software

The HP Easy Printer Care Software is an application that you can use for the following tasks:

- View color usage information.
- Check the printer status.
- Check supplies status.
- Set up alerts.
- Gain access to troubleshooting and maintenance tools.

You can use the HP Easy Printer Care Software when the printer is directly connected to your computer or when it is connected to a network. You must perform a complete software installation to use the HP Easy Printer Care Software. For more information, see <http://www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare>.



NOTE You do not have to have Internet access to open and use the HP Easy Printer Care Software. However, if you click a Web-based link, you must have Internet access to go to the site associated with the link.

Supported operating systems

The HP Easy Printer Care Software is supported for Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows 2003 server.


To use the HP Easy Printer Care Software


Use one of the following methods to open HP Easy Printer Care Software:

- On the **Start** menu, select **Programs**, select **HP Easy Printer Care**, and then select **Start HP Easy Printer Care**.
- In the Windows system tray/taskbar (in the lower righthand corner of the desktop), double-click the HP Easy Printer Care Software icon.
- Double-click the desktop icon.

HP Easy Printer Care Software sections

The HP Easy Printer Care Software contains the sections described in the table below.

Section	Description
Overview tab	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Device list: Shows the printers that you can select.
Contains basic status information for the printer.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Device Status section: Shows printer status information. This section will indicate printer alert conditions, such as an empty print cartridge. It also shows device-identification information, control-panel messages, and print-cartridge levels. After you correct a problem with the printer, click the  button to update the section.• Supplies Status section: Shows detailed supplies status, such as the percentage of toner remaining in the print cartridges and the status of the media that is loaded in each tray.• Supplies Details link: Opens the supplies status page to view more detailed information about printer supplies, ordering information, and recycling information.

Section	Description
Support tab Provides help information and links.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Printer usage reports Software updates, including automatic updates for HP drivers Online diagnostics Online user documentation Online support
	 NOTE If you use a dial-up connection and did not connect to the Internet when you first opened the HP Easy Printer Care Software, you must connect before you can visit these Web sites.
Supplies Ordering window Provides access to online or e-mail supplies ordering.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ordering list: Shows the supplies that you can order for each printer. If you want to order a certain item, click the Order check box for that item in the supplies list. Shop Online for Supplies button: Opens the HP supplies Web site in a new browser window. If you have checked the Order check box for any items, the information about those items can be transferred to the Web site. Print Shopping List button: Prints the information for the supplies that have the Order check box selected. Email Shopping List button: Creates a text list of items that have the Order check box selected. The list can be copied into an e-mail message that you send to your supplier.
Alert Settings window Allows you to configure the printer to automatically notify you of printer issues.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alerts on or off: Activates or deactivates the alerts feature for a certain printer. When alerts appear: Sets when you want alerts to appear—either when you are printing to that particular printer, or anytime there is a printer event. Alert event type: Sets whether you want alerts for only critical errors, or for any error, including continuable errors. Notification type: Sets what type of alert should appear (pop-up message or system tray alert, and e-mail message).
Device List tab Shows information about each printer in the Devices list.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Printer information, including printer name, make, and model An icon (if the View as drop-down box is set to Tiles, which is the default setting) Any current alerts for the printer <p>If you click a printer in the list, the HP Easy Printer Care Software opens the Overview tab for that printer.</p> <p>Device List tab information includes the following:</p>
Find Other Printers window Allows you to add more printers to your printer list.	Clicking the Find Other Printers link in the Devices list opens the Find Other Printers window. The Find Other Printers window provides a utility that detects other network printers so that you can add them to the Devices list and then monitor those printers from your computer.

6 Color

This chapter describes how the HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer provides great color printing. This chapter also describes ways to produce the best possible color prints. The following topics are covered:

- [Using color](#)
- [Color matching](#)
- [Managing printer color options on Windows computers](#)
- [Managing printer color options on Macintosh computers](#)

Using color

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer offers great color printing as soon as you set up the printer. It provides a combination of automatic color features to generate excellent color results for the general office user, plus sophisticated tools for the professional who is experienced with color use.

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer provides carefully designed and tested color tables to provide a smooth, accurate color rendition of all printable colors.

HP ImageREt 3600

HP ImageREt 3600 print technology is a system of innovative technologies developed exclusively by HP to deliver superior print quality. The HP ImageREt system sets itself apart from the industry by integrating technology advancements and optimizing each element of the print system. Several categories of HP ImageREt have been developed for a variety of user needs.

The system's foundation is composed of key color laser technologies, including image enhancements, smart supplies, and high-resolution imaging. As the level or category of ImageREt increases, these core technologies are refined for more advanced system usage, and additional technologies are integrated. HP offers superior image enhancements for general office documents and marketing collateral. Optimized for printing on HP color laser high-gloss papers, HP Image REt 3600 provides superior results on all supported media, and under a variety of environmental conditions.

Paper selection

For the best color and image quality, it is important to select the appropriate media type from the printer menu or from the front panel. See [Selecting print media](#).

Color options

Color options enable optimal color output automatically for diverse types of documents.

Color options use object tagging, which allows optimal color and halftone settings to be used for different objects (text, graphics, and photos) on a page. The printer driver determines which objects are used on a page and uses halftone and color settings that provide the best print quality for each object. Object tagging, combined with optimized default settings, produces great color out of the box.

In the Windows environment, the **Automatic** and **Manual** color options are on the **Color** tab in the printer driver.

For more information, see [Printer drivers](#) or [Printer drivers for Macintosh computers](#).

sRGB

Standard red-green-blue (sRGB) is a world-wide color standard originally developed by HP and Microsoft as a common color language for monitors, input devices (scanners, digital cameras), and output devices (printers, plotters). It is the default color space used for HP products, Microsoft operating systems, the Web, and most office software sold today. sRGB is representative of the typical Windows computer monitor today and the convergence standard for high-definition television.



NOTE Factors such as the type of monitor you use and the room's lighting can affect the appearance of colors on your screen. For more information, see [Color matching](#).

The latest versions of Adobe PhotoShop, CorelDRAW™, Microsoft Office, and many other applications use sRGB to communicate color. Most importantly, as the default color space in Microsoft operating

systems, sRGB has gained broad adoption as a means to exchange color information between applications and devices using a common definition that assures typical users will experience greatly improved color matching. sRGB improves your ability to match colors between the printer, the computer monitor and other input devices (scanner, digital camera) automatically, without the need to become a color expert.

Printing in four colors — CMYK

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (CMYK) are the inks used by a printing press. The process is often called four-color printing. CMYK data files are typically used by and originate from graphic arts (printing and publishing) environments. The printer will accept CMYK colors through the PS printer driver. The printer color-rendering of CMYK is designed to provide rich, saturated colors for text and graphics.

CMYK ink set emulation (PostScript only)

The printer color rendering of CMYK can be made to emulate several standard offset press ink sets. In some situations, the CMYK color values in an image or document might not be suited to the printer. For example, a document might be optimized for another printer. For best results, the CMYK values should be adapted to the HP Color LaserJet 4700. Select the appropriate color input profile from the printer driver.

- **Default CMYK+.** HP CMYK+ technology produces optimal printing results for most printing jobs.
- **SWOP (Specification for Web Offset Publications).** Common ink standard in the United States and other countries/regions.
- **Euroscale (also known as Euro Standard).** Common ink standard in Europe and other countries/regions.
- **DIC (Dainippon Ink and Chemical).** Common ink standard in Japan and other countries/regions.
- **Custom profile.** Select this option to use a custom input profile to accurately control color output, for example, to emulate another HP color LaserJet printer. Color profiles can be downloaded from <http://www.hp.com>.

Color matching

The process of matching printer output color to your computer screen is quite complex because printers and computer monitors use different methods of producing color. Monitors *display* colors by light pixels using an RGB (red, green, blue) color process, but printers *print* colors using a CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) process.

Several factors can influence your ability to match printed colors to those on your monitor. These factors include:

- Print media
- Printer colorants (inks or toners for example)
- Printing process (inkjet, press, or laser technology for example)
- Overhead lighting
- Personal differences in perception of color
- Software applications
- Printer drivers
- Computer operating system
- Monitors
- Video cards and drivers
- Operating environment (humidity for example)

Keep the above factors in mind when colors on your screen do not perfectly match your printed colors.

For most users, the best method for matching colors on your screen to your printer is to print sRGB colors.

PANTONE® color matching

PANTONE® has multiple color matching systems. PANTONE® Matching System is very popular and uses solid inks to generate a wide range of color hues and tints. See <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for details on how to use PANTONE® Matching System with this printer.



NOTE PANTONE® Colors generated may not match PANTONE-identified standards. Consult current PANTONE Publications for accurate color. PANTONE® and other Pantone, Inc. trademarks are the property of Pantone, Inc. © Pantone, Inc., 2000.

Sample book color matching

The process for matching printer output to preprinted sample books and standard color references is complex. In general, you can obtain a reasonably good match to a sample book if the inks used to create the sample book are cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. These are usually referred to as process color sample books.

Some sample books are created from spot colors. Spot colors are specially created colorants. Many of these spot colors are outside of the range of the printer. Most spot color sample books have companion process sample books that provide CMYK approximations to the spot color.

Most process sample books will state which process standards were used to print the sample book. In most cases they will be SWOP, EURO, or DIC. To get optimal color matching to the process sample book, select the corresponding ink emulation from the printer menu. If you cannot identify the process standard, use SWOP ink emulation.

Printing color samples

To use the color samples, select the color sample that is the closest match to the desired color. Use the sample's color value in your application to describe the object you wish to match. Colors may vary depending on paper type and the software application used. For more details on how to use the color samples, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Use the following procedure to print color samples at the printer using the control panel:

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT CMYK SAMPLES** or **PRINT RGB SAMPLES**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT CMYK SAMPLES** or **PRINT RGB SAMPLES**.

Managing printer color options on Windows computers

Setting color options to Automatic typically produces the best possible print quality for the most common printing requirements. However, for some documents, setting the color options manually can enhance the way the document appears. Examples of these documents include marketing brochures that contain many images or documents that are printed on a media type that is not listed in the printer driver.

For Windows, you can print in grayscale or change the color options by using settings found on the **Color** tab in the printer driver.

For more information about how to access the printer drivers, see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#).

Print in grayscale

Select the **Print in Grayscale** option from the printer driver to print a document in black and white.

RGB Color (Color Themes)

Five values are available for the **RGB Color** setting:

- Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the printer to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Organization (www).
- Select **Image optimization (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .JPEG files. This setting instructs the printer to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB, bitmap images. This setting has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy media in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.
- Select **AdobeRGB** for documents that use the *AdobeRGB* color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in AdobeRGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop use the AdobeRGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses AdobeRGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the printer software to manage the color space.
- Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render documents properly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or in the operating system.



CAUTION Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or in the operating system.

- Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other printers or for using special effects, such as sepia tones. This setting instructs the printer to use a custom input profile to more accurately predict and control color output. You can download custom profiles from www.hp.com.

Automatic or manual color adjustment

The **Automatic** color adjustment option optimizes the neutral gray color treatment, halftones, and edge enhancements that are used for each element in a document. For more information, see your printer driver online Help.



NOTE Automatic is the default setting and is recommended for printing most color documents.

The **Manual** color adjustment option allows you to adjust the neutral gray color treatment, halftones, and edge enhancements for text, graphics, and photographs. To access the Manual color options, from the **Color** tab, select **Manual**, then **Settings**.

Manual color options

You can manually adjust color options for Edge Control, Halftones, and Neutral Grays.

Edge Control

The **Edge Control** setting determines how edges are rendered. Edge control has three components: adaptive halftoning, REt, and trapping. Adaptive halftoning increases the edge sharpness. Trapping reduces the effect of incorrect color alignment by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects. The color REt option smoothes the edges.



NOTE If you notice white gaps between objects, or if you notice areas that have a slight shadow of cyan, magenta, or yellow at the edge, choose an edge-control setting that increases the trapping level.

Four levels of edge control are available:

- **Maximum** is the most aggressive trapping setting. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Normal** is the default trapping setting. Trapping is at a medium level. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Light** sets trapping at a minimal level. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Off** turns off trapping, adaptive halftoning, and color REt.

Halftone options

Halftone options affect the resolution and clarity of your color output. You can select halftone settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently. The two halftone options are **Smooth** and **Detail**.

- The **Smooth** option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Choose this option when uniform and smooth area fills are top priority.
- The **Detail** option is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Choose this option when sharp edges and details are top priority.



NOTE Some applications convert text or graphics to bitmap images. In these cases, setting the color options for **Photographs** also affects how text and graphics appear.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** setting determines the method used for creating gray colors that are used in text, graphics, and photographs.

Two values are available for the **Neutral Grays** setting:

- **Black Only** generates neutral colors (grays and black) using only black toner. This guarantees neutral colors without a color cast.
- **4-Color** generates neutral colors (grays and black) by combining all four toner colors. This method produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors, and it produces the darkest black.



NOTE Some applications convert text or graphics to raster images. In these cases, setting the color options for **Photographs** also affects how text and graphics appear.

Restricting color printing

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 Series printers include a **RESTRICT COLOR USE** setting for networked printers. A network administrator can use the setting to restrict user access to the color printing features in order to conserve color toner. If you are unable to print in color, see your network administrator.

1. Press **Menu**.
2. Press ▼ to select **PRINT QUALITY**, and then press ✓.
3. Press ▼ to select **SYSTEM SETUP**, and then press ✓.
4. Press ▼ to select **RESTRICT COLOR USE**, and then press ✓.
5. Press ▼ to select one of the following options:
 - **DISABLE COLOR**: This setting denies the printer color capabilities to all users.
 - **ENABLE COLOR**: This is the default setting, which allows all users to use the printer color capabilities.
 - **COLOR IF ALLOWED**: This setting allows the network administrator to allow color use for select users. Use the embedded Web server to designate users who can print in color.
6. Press ✓ to save the setting.

The network administrator can monitor color usage for a specific HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer by printing a color usage job log. See [Printer information pages](#) for more information.

For more information on restricting and reporting color usage, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/coloraccess>.

Managing printer color options on Macintosh computers

Setting the color options to Automatic typically produces the best possible print quality for the most common printing requirements. However, for some documents, setting the color options manually can enhance the way the document appears. Examples of these documents include marketing brochures that contain many images or documents that are printed on a media type that is not listed in the printer driver.

Print color as gray or change the color options by using the **Color Options** pop-up menu in the **Print** dialog box.

For more information about how to gain access to the printer drivers, see [Gaining access to the printer drivers](#).

Print Color as Gray

Selecting the **Print Color as Gray** option from the printer driver prints a document in black and shades of gray. This option is useful for previewing preliminary copies of slides and hardcopy output, or for printing color documents that will be photocopied or faxed.

Advanced color options for text, graphics, and photographs

Use manual color adjustment to adjust the **Color** (or **Color Map**) and **Halftoning** options for a print job.

Halftone options

Halftone options affect the resolution and clarity of your color output. You can select halftone settings independently for text, graphics, and photographs. The two halftone options are **Smooth** and **Detail**.

- The **Smooth** option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Select this option when uniform and smooth area fills are the top priority.
- The **Detail** option is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option when sharp edges and details are the top priority.



NOTE Some software programs convert text or graphics to raster images. In these cases, the **Photographs** settings also control text and graphics.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** setting determines the method that the printer uses to create gray colors in text, graphics, and photographs.

Two values are available for the **Neutral Grays** setting:

- **Black Only** generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This guarantees neutral colors that do not have a color cast.
- **4-Color** generates neutral colors (grays and black) by combining all four toner colors. This method produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors, and it produces the darkest black.



NOTE Some software programs convert text or graphics to raster images. In these cases, the **Photographs** settings also control text and graphics.

RGB Color

Five values are available for the **RGB Color** setting:

- Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the printer to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Organization (www).
- Select **Image optimization (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .JPEG files. This setting instructs the printer to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB, bitmap images. This setting has no effect on text or vector-based graphics. Using glossy media in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.
- Select **AdobeRGB** for documents that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in AdobeRGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe PhotoShop use the AdobeRGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses AdobeRGB, it is important that you turn off the color management in the software program and allow the printer software to manage the color space.
- Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render documents properly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program that you are using or in the operating system.



CAUTION Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or in the operating system.

- Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other printers or for using special effects, such as sepia tones. This setting instructs the printer to use a custom input profile to more accurately predict and control color output. You can download custom profiles from www.hp.com.

Edge Control

The **Edge Control** setting determines how edges are rendered. Edge control has three components: adaptive halftoning, Resolution Enhancement Technology (REt), and trapping. Adaptive halftoning increases the edge sharpness. Trapping reduces the effect of incorrect color alignment by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects. The color REt option smooths the edges.



NOTE If you notice white gaps between objects, or if you notice areas that have a slight shadow of cyan, magenta, or yellow at the edge, choose an edge-control setting that increases the trapping level.

Four levels of edge control are available:

- **Maximum** is the most aggressive trapping setting. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Normal** is the default trapping setting. Trapping is at a medium level. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Light** sets trapping at a minimal level. Adaptive halftoning and color REt settings are on.
- **Off** turns off trapping, adaptive halftoning, and color REt.

7 Maintenance

This chapter describes ways to maintain your printer. The following topics are covered:

- [Managing print cartridges](#)
- [Changing print cartridges](#)
- [Replacing supplies](#)
- [Using the cleaning page](#)
- [Configuring alerts](#)

Managing print cartridges

Be sure to use genuine HP print cartridges for the best printing results. This section provides information on proper use and storage of HP print cartridges. It also provides information about using non-HP print cartridges.

HP print cartridges

When you use a genuine new HP print cartridge, you can obtain the following supplies information:

- Percentage of supplies remaining
- Estimated number of pages remaining
- Number of pages printed



NOTE See [Part numbers](#) for cartridge ordering information.

Non-HP print cartridges

Hewlett-Packard Company cannot recommend use of non-HP print cartridges, either new or remanufactured. Because they are not genuine HP products, HP cannot influence their design or control their quality. Service or repair required as a result of using a non-HP print cartridge *will not* be covered under the printer warranty.

When you use a non-HP print cartridge, certain features, such as remaining toner volume data may not be available as a result of using this non-HP supply.

If the non-HP print cartridge was sold to you as a genuine HP product, see [HP fraud hotline](#).

Print cartridge authentication

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printer automatically authenticates the print cartridges when the cartridges are inserted into the printer. During authentication, the printer will let you know if a cartridge is a genuine HP print cartridge.

If the printer control panel message states that this is not a genuine HP print cartridge and you believe you purchased an HP print cartridge, call the HP fraud hotline.

To override a non-HP print cartridge error message, press the ✓ button.

HP fraud hotline

Call the HP fraud hotline (1-877-219-3183, toll-free in North America) when you install an HP print cartridge and the printer message says the cartridge is non-HP. HP will help determine if the product is genuine and take steps to resolve the problem.

Your print cartridge might not be a genuine HP print cartridge if you notice the following:

- You are experiencing a high number of problems with the print cartridge.
- The cartridge does not look like it usually does (for example, the packaging differs from HP packaging).

Print cartridge storage

Do not remove the print cartridge from its package until you are ready to use it.



CAUTION To prevent damage to the print cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes.

Print cartridge life expectancy

The life of the print cartridge depends on usage patterns and the amount of toner that print jobs require. An HP color print cartridge lasts an average of 10,000 pages and an HP black print cartridge lasts an average of 11,000 pages when printing on letter or A4-size paper at 5% coverage for each print cartridge. Usage conditions and print patterns could cause actual results to vary.

At any time, you can verify the life expectancy by checking the toner level, as described below.

Checking the print cartridge life

You can check the print cartridge life using the printer control panel, the embedded Web server, printer software, HP Easy Printer Care Software, or HP Web Jetadmin software.

Using the printer control panel

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press **✓** to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT SUPPLIES STATUS PAGE**.
5. Press **✓** to print the supplies status page.

Using the embedded Web server

1. In your browser, enter the IP address for the printer home page. This takes you to the printer status page. See [Using the embedded Web server](#).
2. On the left side of the screen, click **Supplies Status**. This takes you to the supplies status page, which provides print cartridge information.

Using HP Easy Printer Care Software

In the **Overview** tab, in the **Supplies Status** section, click **Supplies Details** to open the supplies status page.

For more information on HP Easy Printer Care software, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare>.

Using HP Web Jetadmin

In HP Web Jetadmin, select the printer device. The device status page shows print cartridge information.

Changing print cartridges

When a print cartridge approaches the end of its useful life, the control panel displays a message recommending that you order a replacement. The printer can continue to print using the current print cartridge until the control panel displays a message instructing you to replace the cartridge.

The printer uses four colors and has a different print cartridge for each color: black (K), magenta (M), cyan (C), and yellow (Y).

Replace a print cartridge when the printer control panel displays a **REPLACE <COLOR> CARTRIDGE** message. The control panel display will also indicate the color that should be replaced (if a genuine HP cartridge is currently installed).

Replacing a print cartridge



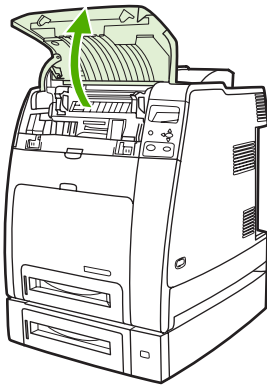
CAUTION If toner gets on clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash the clothes in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.



NOTE For information about recycling used print cartridges, see [HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program Information](#), or visit the HP LaserJet Supplies Web site at <http://www.hp.com/go/recycle>.

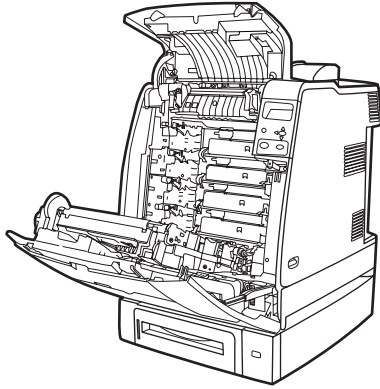
To replace the print cartridge

1. Lift the top cover of the printer.



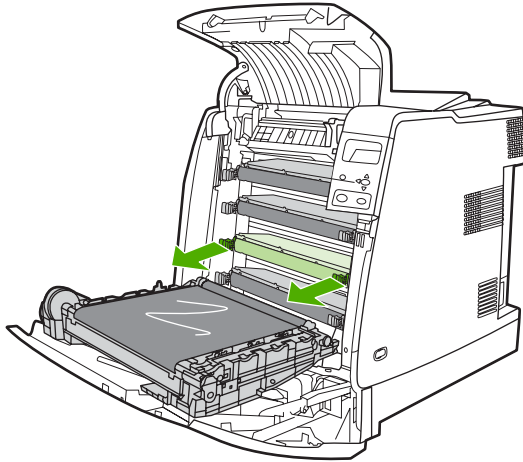
CAUTION The fuser might be hot.

2. Pull down the front cover and transfer unit.

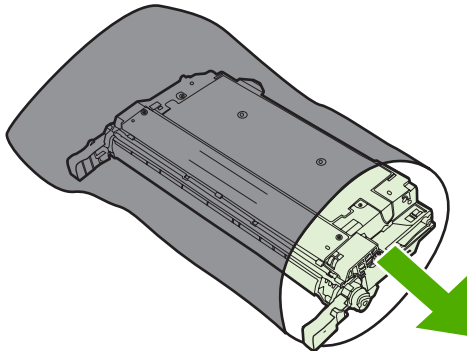


CAUTION Do not place any item on the transfer unit while it is open. If the transfer unit is punctured, print quality problems could result.

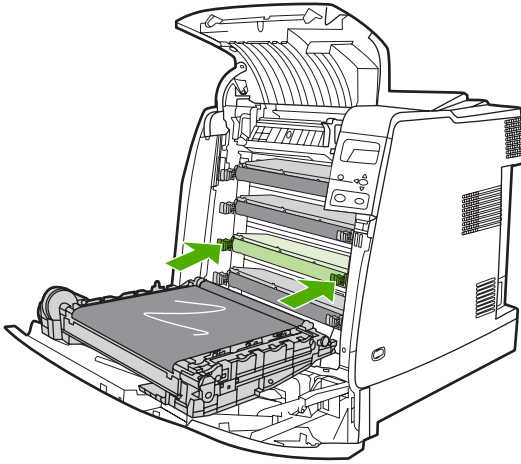
3. Remove the used print cartridge from the printer.



4. Remove the new print cartridge from the bag. Place the used print cartridge in the bag for recycling.



5. Align the print cartridge with the tracks inside the printer and insert the cartridge until it is completely seated.



NOTE The print cartridge tape seal is removed automatically when the print cartridge is installed in the printer.

NOTE If a cartridge is in the wrong slot, the control panel will display the message **INCORRECT [COLOR] CARTRIDGE**.

6. Close the front cover and then close the top cover. After a short while, the control panel should display **Ready**.
7. Installation is complete. Place the used print cartridge in the box in which the new cartridge arrived. See the enclosed recycling guide for recycling instructions.
8. If you are using a non-HP print cartridge, check the control panel for further instructions.

For additional help, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Replacing supplies

When you use genuine HP supplies, the printer automatically notifies you when supplies are nearly depleted. The notification to order supplies allows ample time to order new supplies before they need to be replaced.

Locating supplies

Supplies are identified by their labeling and their blue plastic handles.

The following figure illustrates the location of each supply item.

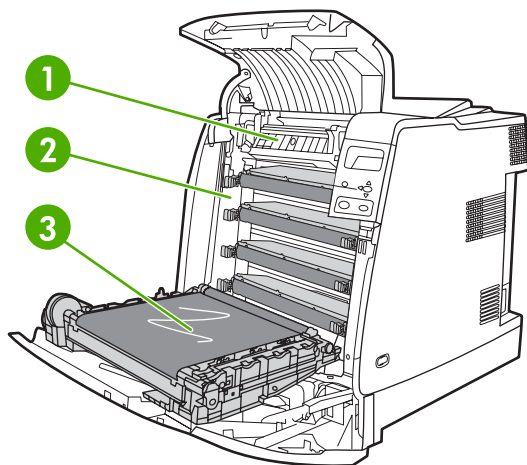


Figure 7-1 Supply item locations

1	Fuser
2	Print cartridges
3	Transfer unit

Supply replacement guidelines

To facilitate the replacement of supplies, keep the following guidelines in mind when setting up the printer.

- Allow sufficient space above and in the front of the printer for removing supplies.
- The printer should be located on a flat, sturdy surface.

For instructions on installing supplies, see the installation guides provided with each supply item or see more information at <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>. When you connect, select **Solve a Problem**.



CAUTION Hewlett-Packard recommends the use of genuine HP products in this printer. Use of non-HP products may cause problems requiring service that is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard extended warranty or service agreements.

Making room around the printer for replacing supplies

The following illustration shows the clearance necessary in front of, above, and to the side of the printer for replacing supplies.

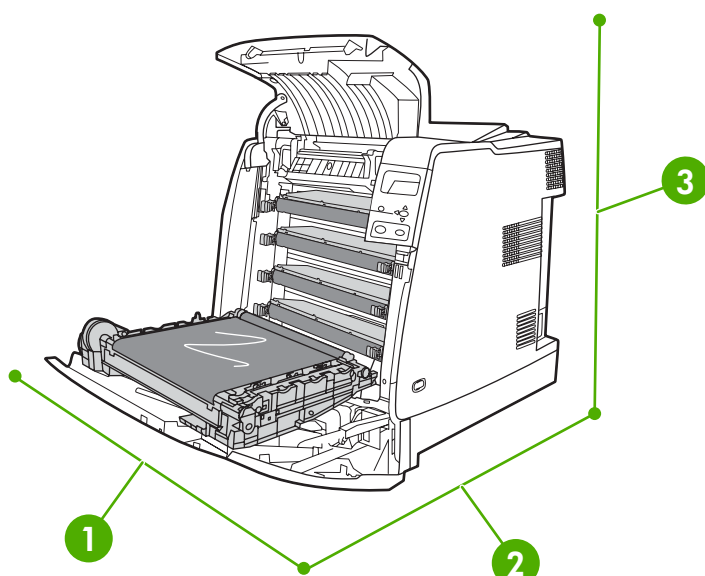


Figure 7-2 Supplies replacement clearance diagram

1	530 mm (20.9 inches)
2	1294 mm (50 inches)
3	804 mm (31.7 inches)

Approximate replacement intervals for supplies

The following table lists the estimated replacement intervals for supplies and the control panel messages that prompt when to replace each item. Usage conditions and print patterns can cause results to vary.

Item	Printer message	Page count	Approximate time period ²
Black cartridges	REPLACE BLACK CARTRIDGE	11,000 pages ¹	3 months
Color cartridges	REPLACE <COLOR> CARTRIDGE	10,000 pages ¹	2.7 months
Image transfer kit	REPLACE TRANSFER KIT	120,000 pages	40 months
Image fuser kit	REPLACE FUSER KIT	150,000 pages ³	50 months

¹ Approximate average A4-/letter-size page count based on 5% coverage of individual colors.

² Approximate life is based on 3,000 pages per month.

³ Approximate life is estimated at 150,000 pages when printing in 4-page intermittent mode.

You can use the embedded Web server to order supplies. For more information, see [Using the embedded Web server](#).

Replacing the stapler cartridge

The stapler cartridge contains 5,000 staples. Replace the entire cartridge when it is empty.

Replace the stapler cartridge if the printer control panel display prompts you with a **STAPLER LOW ON STAPLES** message (at this point, the stapler cartridge has 20 to 50 staples left) or a **REPLACE**

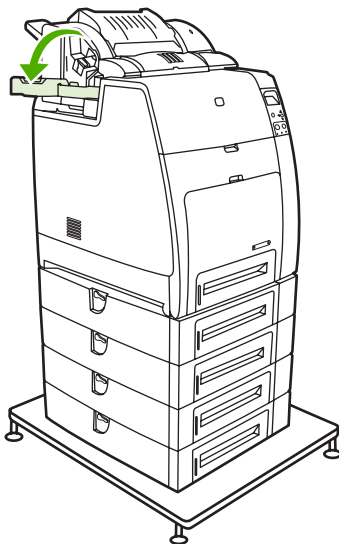
STAPLER CARTRIDGE message. If the stapler runs out of staples and the stapler/stacker is configured to **CONTINUE**, jobs continue to print to the stapler/stacker, but they are not stapled. If the stapler/stacker is configured to stop, printing stops until a new stapler cartridge is loaded.



NOTE HP recommends that you replace the stapler cartridge as soon as the **REPLACE STAPLER CARTRIDGE** message is displayed. Although some usable staples remain in the cartridge, they could fall into the stapler mechanism and cause product failure.

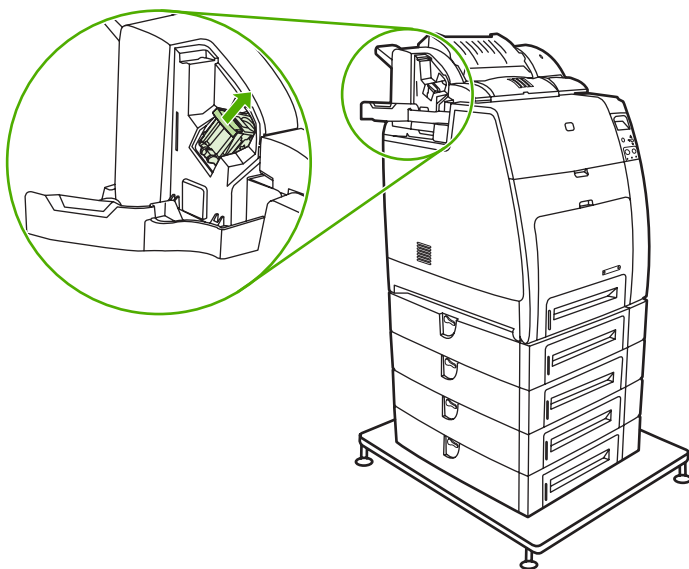
Loading a new stapler cartridge

1. On the left side of the stapler/stacker, open the stapler cartridge cover by gently pulling it.

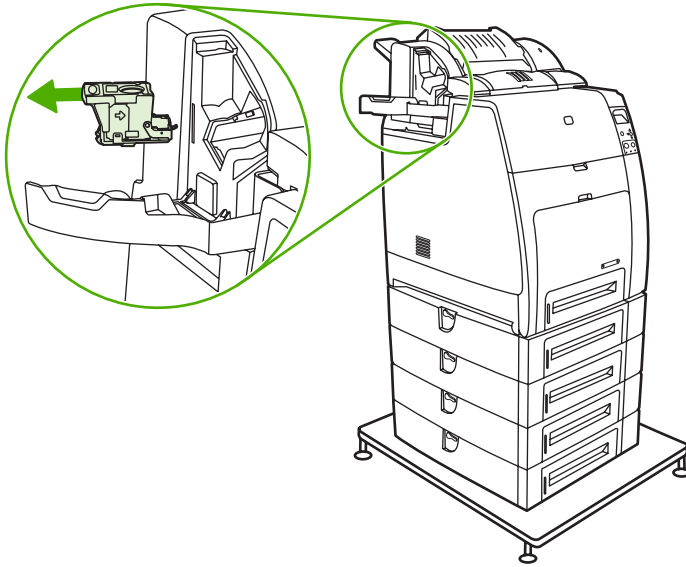


NOTE For information on ordering a new stapler cartridge (part number C8091A), see [Supplies and accessories](#).

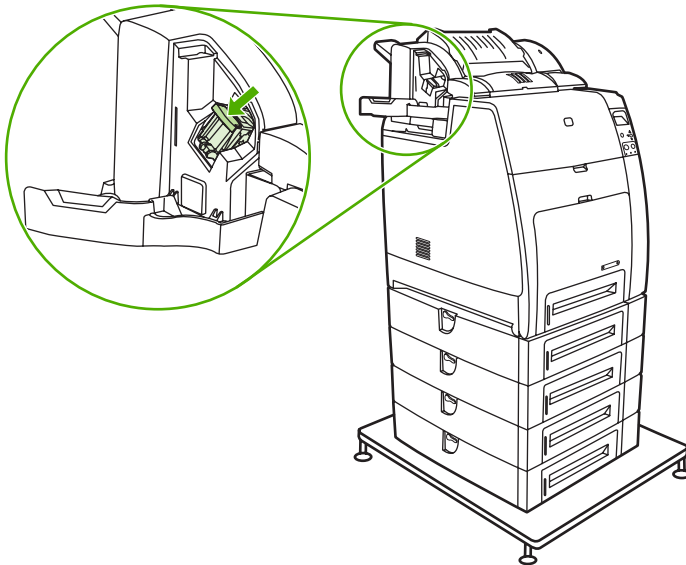
2. Grasp the stapler cartridge handle and pull up gently.



3. Twist the stapler cartridge gently in a counter-clockwise direction and pull it out.

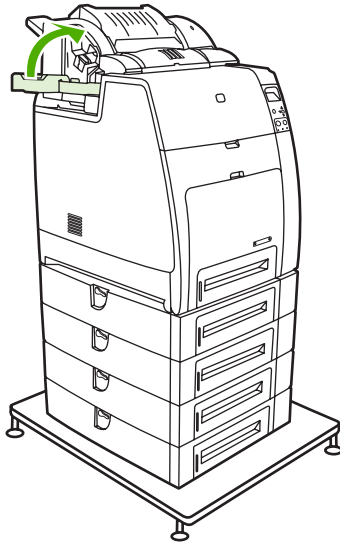


4. Insert the new stapler cartridge and push it down until it snaps into place.



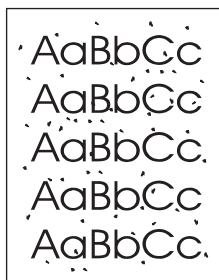
NOTE To obtain a new stapler cartridge, order part number C8091A.

5. Close the stapler cartridge door.



Using the cleaning page

During printing, toner and dust particles can accumulate inside the printer. Over time, this buildup can cause print quality problems, such as toner specks or smearing. This printer has a cleaning mode that can correct and prevent these problems.



Cleaning the HP Color LaserJet 4700 and HP Color LaserJet 4700n printers at the control panel

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT QUALITY**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **CREATE CLEANING PAGE**.
7. Press **✓** to select **CREATE CLEANING PAGE**.



NOTE The printer prints a cleaning page with a pattern. The **PROCESS CLEANING PAGE** option is not available for these printers until the cleaning page has been created.

8. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
9. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
10. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
11. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.
12. Press **✓** to select **PRINT QUALITY**.

13. Press ▼ to highlight **PROCESS CLEANING PAGE**.

14. Press ✓ to select **PROCESS CLEANING PAGE**.

Cleaning the HP Color LaserJet 4700dn, HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn, and HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ printers at the control panel

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.

2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.

5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT QUALITY**.

6. Press ▼ to highlight **PROCESS CLEANING PAGE**.

7. Press ✓ to select **PROCESS CLEANING PAGE**.

A page with a pattern prints.

Setting auto cleaning

The **AUTO CLEANING** menu option allows you to turn auto cleaning on or off. When auto cleaning is turned on, the printer prints a cleaning page when the page count reaches the value set in the cleaning interval. If auto cleaning is set to **Off**, the cleaning interval is not shown. The default value for auto cleaning is **Off**.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.

2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.

5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT QUALITY**.

6. Press ▼ to highlight **AUTO CLEANING**.

7. Press ✓ to select **AUTO CLEANING**.

8. Press ▼ to highlight the desired value.

9. Press ✓ to select the desired value.

Setting the cleaning interval

The **CLEANING INTERVAL** menu option allows you to set the interval at which the auto cleaning is due for the printer. The cleaning interval can be set anywhere from 1,000 to 20,000 pages.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.

2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.

4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.

5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT QUALITY**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **CLEANING INTERVAL**.
7. Press ✓ to select **CLEANING INTERVAL**.
8. Press ▼ to highlight the desired value.
9. Press ✓ to select the desired value.

Configuring alerts

You can use HP Web Jetadmin or the printer's embedded Web server to configure the system to alert you of problems with the printer. The alerts take the form of e-mail messages to the e-mail account or accounts that you specify.

You can configure the following:

- The printer(s) you want to monitor
- What alerts are to be received (for example, alerts for paper jams, paper out, supplies status, and cover open)
- The e-mail account to which the alerts should be forwarded

Software	Information location
HP Web Jetadmin	<p>See HP Web Jetadmin for general information about HP Web Jetadmin.</p> <p>See the HP Web Jetadmin Help system for details on alerts and how to set them up.</p>
Embedded Web server	<p>See Using the embedded Web server for general information about the embedded Web server.</p> <p>See the embedded Web server Help system for details on alerts and how to set them up.</p>

8 Problem solving

This chapter describes what to do if problems arise with your printer. The following topics are covered:

- [Basic troubleshooting checklist](#)
- [Factors affecting printer performance](#)
- [Troubleshooting information pages](#)
- [Control panel message types](#)
- [Control panel messages](#)
- [Paper jams](#)
- [Common causes of paper jams](#)
- [Clearing jams](#)
- [Media-handling problems](#)
- [Printer response problems](#)
- [Printer control panel problems](#)
- [Incorrect printer output](#)
- [Software application problems](#)
- [Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems](#)
- [Color printing problems](#)
- [Print quality troubleshooting](#)

Basic troubleshooting checklist

If you are experiencing problems with the printer, this checklist can help identify the cause of the problem.

- Is the printer connected to power?
- Is the printer in the **Ready** state?
- Are all necessary cables connected?
- Are any messages displayed on the control panel?
- Was a genuine HP supply installed?
- Were recently replaced print cartridges installed correctly?
- Were recently installed supplies (image fuser kit, image transfer kit) installed correctly?
- Is the on/off switch in the on position?

If you cannot find solutions to printer problems in this guide, see <http://www.hp.com/supplies/clj4700>.

For additional information on installation and setup of the printer, see the getting started guide for this printer.

Factors affecting printer performance

Several factors affect the time it takes to print a job. Among these is maximum printer speed, measured in pages per minute (ppm). Other factors that affect printing speed include the use of special media (such as transparencies, glossy media, heavy media, and custom-size media), printer processing time, and download time.

The time required to download a print job from the computer and to process the job depends on the following variables:

- The complexity and size of graphics
- The printer's I/O configuration (network versus parallel)
- The speed of the computer you are using
- The amount of printer memory installed
- The network operating system and configuration (if applicable)
- Printer personality (PCL or PostScript 3 emulation)



NOTE Adding additional printer memory might resolve memory problems, improve how the printer handles complex graphics, and improve download times, but it will not increase maximum printer speed (ppm rating).

Troubleshooting information pages

From the printer control panel, you can print pages that can help diagnose printer problems. The procedures for printing the following information pages are described here:

- Configuration page



NOTE It is recommended that you print a configuration page before beginning any printer diagnostics.

- Paper path test page
- Registration page
- Event log

Configuration page

Use the configuration page to view or restore current printer settings, to help troubleshoot printer problems, or to verify installation of optional accessories, such as DIMMs, paper handling accessories, trays, and printer languages.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press ✓ to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.

The message **Printing... CONFIGURATION** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the configuration page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing.



NOTE If the printer is configured with an HP Jetdirect print server, duplexer, or stapler/stacker, an additional configuration page will print that provides information about those devices.

Paper path test page

The **paper path test** page is useful for testing the paper handling features of the printer. You can define the paper path you want to test by selecting the source, destination, and other options available on the printer.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **DIAGNOSTICS**.
3. Press ✓ to select **DIAGNOSTICS**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PAPER PATH TEST**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PAPER PATH TEST**.

The message **Performing... PAPER PATH TEST** appears on the display until the printer finishes the paper path test. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the paper path test page.

Registration page

The **registration** page prints a horizontal arrow and a vertical arrow that show how far from center an image can be printed on the page. You can set registration values for a tray so that an image on the back and front of a page is centered. Setting the registration also allows edge-to-edge printing to be set to within approximately 2 mm (0.08 inch) of all edges of the paper. Image placement varies slightly for each tray. Perform the registration procedure for each tray.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press ✓ to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT QUALITY**.
6. Press ▼ to highlight **SET REGISTRATION**.
7. Press ✓ to select **SET REGISTRATION**.



NOTE You can select a tray by specifying a **SOURCE**. The default **SOURCE** is Tray 2. To set the registration for Tray 2, go to step 12. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.

8. Press ▼ to highlight **SOURCE**.
9. Press ✓ to select **SOURCE**.
10. Press ▼ or ▲ to highlight a tray.
11. Press ✓ to select the tray.

After selecting the tray, the printer control panel returns to the **SET REGISTRATION** menu.

12. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT TEST PAGE**.
13. Press ✓ to select **PRINT TEST PAGE**.
14. Follow the instructions on the printed page.

The message **Printing... REGISTRATION PAGE** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the registration page. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the registration page.

Event log

The event log lists the printer events, including printer jams, service errors, and other printer conditions.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **DIAGNOSTICS**.
3. Press ✓ to select **DIAGNOSTICS**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT EVENT LOG**.
5. Press ✓ to select **PRINT EVENT LOG**.

The message **Printing... EVENT LOG** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the event log. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the event log.

Control panel message types

Control panel messages are divided into three types, depending on their severity.

- Status messages
- Warning messages
- Error messages

Within the error message category, some messages are ranked as *Critical* error messages. This section explains the differences between the control panel message types.

Status messages

Status messages reflect the current state of the printer. They inform you of normal printer operation and require no interaction to clear them. They change as the state of the printer changes. Whenever the printer is ready, not busy, and has no pending warning messages, the status message **Ready** is displayed if the printer is online.

Warning messages

Warning messages inform you of data and print errors. These messages typically alternate with the **Ready** or **Status** messages and remain displayed until the ✓ button is pressed. If **CLEARABLE WARNINGS** is set to **JOB** in the printer's configuration menu, these messages are cleared by the next print job.

Error messages

Error messages communicate that some action must be performed, such as adding paper or clearing a paper jam.

Some error messages are auto-continuable; if **AUTO CONTINUE=ON** the printer will continue normal operation after displaying an auto-continuable error message for 10 seconds.



NOTE Any button pressed during the 10-second display of an auto-continuable error message will override the auto-continue feature and the function of the button pressed will take precedence. For example, pressing the **Menu** button will display the main menu.

Critical error messages

Critical error messages inform you of a device failure. Some of these messages can be cleared by turning the printer off and then on. These messages are not affected by the **AUTO CONTINUE** setting. If a critical error persists, service is required.

The following table lists and describes control panel messages, in alphabetical order.

Control panel messages

Message listing

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
10.90.XY REPLACE COLOR CARTRIDGE alternates with For help press ?	A color cartridge is out of toner and needs to be replaced.	Replace the color cartridge.
10.92.YY CARTRIDGES NOT ENGAGED	The print cartridge is not seated properly in the printer.	Remove and reinstall the print cartridge.
10.XX.YY SUPPLY MEMORY ERROR alternates with For help press ? The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	The printer cannot read or write to at least one print cartridge memory tag or at least one memory tag is missing. The following control panel messages correspond to the color of the print cartridge: 10.00.00 = black print cartridge 10.00.01 = cyan print cartridge 10.00.02 = magenta print cartridge 10.00.03 = yellow print cartridge	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. Press ? for more information. 3. If the error persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
11.X INTERNAL CLOCK ERROR To continue press ✓	This message is displayed when there is a problem with the real-time clock on the formatter board. XX=01 Dead clock battery XX=02 Dead real-time clock	Press ✓ to continue. If this error occurs, the printer will continue to track the time and date using the processor clock until the printer is turned off. Unless the error is corrected, you will be prompted to reset the date and time whenever the printer is turned off then on.
13.XX.YY EXTERNAL OUTPUT DEVICE PAPER JAM	There is a jam in the stapler/stacker.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. 3. For more information about clearing jams, see Jams in the stapler/stacker. 4. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN DUPLEX PATH For help press ?	There is a jam in the duplex path.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN OUTPUT DEVICE alternates with For help press ?	Paper is jammed in an external paper handling device. The amber light on the stacker/stapler is blinking.	<p>Check the duplexer or the stapler/stacker for jammed paper. For more information, see Jams in the stapler/stacker.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN PAPER PATH For help press ?	There is a jam in the paper path.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN STAPLER For help press ?	A staple is jammed in the stapler. Check the stapler/stacker for jammed staples.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. For more information on clearing jams, see Jams in the stapler/stacker. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN TRAY 1 Clear jam then press ✓	Paper is jammed in Tray 1.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▼ to see step by step information. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN TRAY X For help press ?	A page is jammed in Tray 2 or in one or more of the optional trays.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM IN TOP COVER OR DUPLEX AREA For help press ?	There is a jam in the top cover area.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY JAM INSIDE DUPLEXER For help press ?	Paper is jammed in the duplexer. Check the device for jammed paper.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY MULTIPLE JAMS IN DUPLEX PATH For help press ?	There are multiple jams in the duplex path. This includes the top cover area.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
13.XX.YY MULTIPLE JAMS IN PAPER PATH For help press ?	There are multiple jams in the paper path. This includes the top cover area.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? for detailed information about clearing the jam. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. for more information, see Clearing jams. If the message persists after clearing all pages, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
20 INSUFFICIENT MEMORY For help press ? alternates with 20 INSUFFICIENT MEMORY To continue press ✓	The printer has received more data from the computer than fits in available memory.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to continue printing. <div>  <div> NOTE A loss of data will occur. </div> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Reduce the complexity of the print job to avoid this error in the future. Adding memory to the printer may allow printing of more complex pages.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
22 EIO X BUFFER OVERFLOW To continue press ✓	The EIO card in card slot X has overflowed its I/O buffer during a busy state.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to continue printing. <div>  NOTE A loss of data will occur. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
22 EMBEDDED I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW alternates with To continue press ✓	The embedded JetDirect print server has overflowed.	Press ✓ to continue. When this error occurs, data might be lost. If necessary, resend the job to the printer.
22 PARALLEL I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW For help press ? alternates with 22 PARALLEL I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW To continue press ✓	The parallel buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to resume printing. <div>  NOTE A loss of data will occur. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the message persists, disconnect the parallel cable at both ends and reconnect. If the message still persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
22 USB I/O BUFFER OVERFLOW To continue press ✓	The USB buffer has overflowed during a busy state.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to continue printing. <div>  NOTE A loss of data will occur. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
40 EIO X BAD TRANSMISSION To continue press ✓	A connection with the card in EIO slot X has been broken.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to continue printing. <div>  NOTE A loss of data will occur. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
40 EMBEDDED I/O BAD TRANSMISSION alternates with To continue press ✓	A connection with the embedded JetDirect print server has been broken.	Turn the printer off then on. Press ? for more information. If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
41.3 UNEXPECTED SIZE IN TRAY X For help press ? alternates with LOAD TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] To use another tray press ✓	Media is loaded that is longer or shorter in the feed direction than the size configured for the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the incorrect size was selected, cancel the job or press ? to access help. OR <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press ✓ to select another tray. 3. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.
41.5 UNEXPECTED TYPE IN TRAY X For help press ? alternates with LOAD TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] To use another tray press ✓	The printer senses a different media type in the media path than configured in the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the incorrect type was selected, cancel the job or press ? to access help. OR <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Press ✓ to select another tray. 3. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.
44.1 USB ACCESSORY ERROR For help press ?	This message appears when a connected USB accessory draws too much power. When this happens, the ACC port is disabled and printing stops.	Press ▼ to see step by step information.
49.XXXX PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A critical firmware error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
50.X FUSER ERROR For help press ?	A fuser error has occurred. The following are specific fuser errors: 50.1: A low fuser temperature error has occurred in the main thermistor. 50.2: A fuser warm-up service error has occurred. 50.3: A high fuser temperature error has occurred in the main thermistor. 50.6: An open fuser error has occurred. 50.7: A fuser pressure release mechanism failure has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. 3. If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.


Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
	The error might be due to an inadequate power supply, inadequate line voltage, or a problem with the fuser.	
50.X FUSER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A fuser error has occurred.	Turn the printer off then on.
51.2Y PRINTER ERROR For help press ? alternates with 51.2Y PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	<p>Either a laser beam detects an error, or a laser error has occurred.</p> <p>The values of Y are:</p> <p>Y Description</p> <p>0 - Black</p> <p>1 - Cyan</p> <p>2 - Magenta</p> <p>3 - Yellow</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
52.XY PRINTER ERROR alternates with To continue turn off then on	A printer error has occurred.	<p>Turn the printer off then on. Press ? for more information.</p> <p>If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.</p>
53.XY.ZZ CHECK RAM DIMM SLOT X	A memory error has occurred.	<p>If prompted to do so, press ✓ to continue. The printer should come to the Ready state, but will not make full use of all memory installed.</p> <p>Otherwise:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Verify that all DDR SDRAM meets specifications and is correctly seated. 3. Turn the printer on. 4. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
54.01 PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	Printing cannot continue. The humidity environmental sensor is abnormal.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
54.X PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	<p>Printing cannot continue. There is a sensor malfunction.</p> <p>Values of X are:</p> <p>01 - Humidity sensor</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
	15 - Yellow 16 - Magenta 17 - Cyan 18 - Black	
55.0X.YY DC CONTROLLER ERROR For help press ? alternates with 55.0X.YY PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A printer command error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
56.XX PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A printer error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
57.0X PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A printer fan error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
58.0X PRINTER ERROR For help press ? alternates with 58.0X PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A memory tag error was detected.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
59.XY PRINTER ERROR For help press ? alternates with 59.XY	A printer motor error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700. <p>Note: This message might also appear if the transfer unit is missing or incorrectly installed. Ensure that the transfer unit is correctly installed.</p>

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
PRINTER ERROR		
To continue		
turn off then on		
60.X	A tray lifting error has occurred, where XX is the number of the tray.	1. Press ▼ to see step by step information.
PRINTER ERROR		2. If the error reappears, turn the printer off then on.
alternates with		3. If the error does not clear, record the message and contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .
To continue		
turn off then on		
62 NO SYSTEM	No system was found.	1. Turn the printer off then on.
To continue		2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .
turn off then on		
65.X.X OUTPUT	An external output device has a condition that needs attention before printing can resume. The amber light on the stapler/stacker is blinking.	Remove any jammed paper and open and then close the top cover. If necessary, re-seat the output device.
DEVICE CONDITION		
65.X.X OUTPUT	Communication between the printer and the device has been broken. The device could be disconnected.	Turn the printer off. Replace the stapler/stacker on the printer. Turn the printer on.
DEVICE DISCONNECTED		If the error does not clear, record the message and contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .
66.XX.X OUTPUT	The stapler/stacker has failed. The amber light on the stapler/stacker is solid.	1. Turn the printer off.
DEVICE FAILURE		2. Check the stapling bed for jammed paper or staples. Verify that the stapler cartridge is intact.
		3. Check that nothing is obstructing the movement of the stapler/stacker.
		4. Check that the output tray is properly installed.
		5. Turn the printer on.
68.X PERMANENT	A non-volatile storage device is full. Pressing the ✓ button should clear the message. Printing can continue, but there may be unexpected behavior.	1. Press ✓ to continue.
STORAGE FULL		2. For 68.0 errors, turn the printer off then on.
For help press ?		3. If a 68.0 error persists, contact HP Support.
alternates with		
68.X PERMANENT	X Description	4. For 68.1 errors, use the HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the disk drive.
	0 for onboard NVRAM	
STORAGE FULL	1 for removable disk (flash or hard)	5. For 68.1 errors that persist, contact HP Support.
To continue press ✓		

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
68.X PERMANENT STORAGE WRITE FAIL To continue press ✓	A non-volatile storage device is full. Pressing the ✓ button should clear the message. Printing can continue, but there may be unexpected behavior. X Description 0 for onboard NVRAM 1 for removable disk (flash or hard)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ✓ to continue. 2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on. 3. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
68.X STORAGE ERROR SETTINGS CHANGED For help press ? alternates with 68.X STORAGE ERROR SETTINGS CHANGED To continue press ✓	One or more printer settings saved in the non-volatile storage device is invalid and has been reset to its factory default. Pressing the ✓ button should clear the message. Printing can continue, but there may be unexpected behavior.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ✓ to continue. 2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on. 3. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
69.X PRINTER ERROR For help press ? alternates with 69.X PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A printer error has occurred.	Turn the printer off then on. Press ? for more information.
79.XXXX PRINTER ERROR To continue turn off then on	A critical hardware error has occurred.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
8X.YYYY EIO X ERROR	The I/O accessory card in slot X has encountered a critical error. X Description 1: error in slot 1 2: error in slot 2	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off then on. 2. If the problem persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
8X.YYYY EMBEDDED JETDIRECT ERROR	This message is generated by a failure of the embedded JetDirect print server.	Turn the printer off then on. Press ? for more information. If the message persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .
[FS] DEVICE FAILURE To clear press ✓	A device failure has occurred on the specified drive. Printing can continue for jobs that do not require the Flash DIMM.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 2. If the message persists, remove and re-install the EIO disk drive.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
<p>alternates with</p> <p>Ready</p>		<p>3. Turn the printer back on.</p> <p>4. If the message still persists, replace the Flash DIMM.</p>
<p>[FS] DEVICE WRITE PROTECTED</p> <p>To clear press ✓</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>Ready</p>	<p>The file system device is protected and no new files can be written to it.</p>	<p>1. To enable writing to the Flash Memory, turn off write protection, using HP Web Jetadmin.</p> <p>2. To clear the message, press the ✓ key.</p> <p>3. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.</p>
<p>[FS] FILE OPERATION FAILED</p> <p>To clear press ✓</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>Ready</p>	<p>The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to perform an illogical operation (for example, to download a file to a non-existent directory).</p>	<p>1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key.</p> <p>2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.</p> <p>3. If the message reappears, there may be a problem with the software application.</p>
<p>[FS] FILE SYSTEM IS FULL</p> <p>To clear press ✓</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>Ready</p>	<p>The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to store something on the file system but was unsuccessful because the file system is full.</p>	<p>1. Use HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the Flash Memory and try again.</p> <p>2. To clear the message, press the ✓ key.</p> <p>3. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.</p>
<p>[FS] NOT INITIALIZED</p>	<p>The device has not been initialized.</p>	<p>You can use Web JetAdmin to initialize the device.</p>
<p>ABCDEFGHJIJ 0110000000</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>To exit press Stop</p>	<p>This message is displayed when a paper path sensor test or a paper path test is run. The alphabetical value indicates which sensor is being checked.</p>	<p>No action necessary.</p>
<p>Access Denied MENUS LOCKED</p>	<p>An attempt has been made to modify a menu item while the control panel security mechanism is enabled by the printer administrator. The message will disappear shortly, and the printer will return to Ready state.</p>	<p>Contact the printer administrator to change settings.</p>
<p>BAD DUPLEXER CONNECTION</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>For help press ?</p>	<p>The duplexer is not connected properly and must be reinserted before printing can continue.</p>	<p>Turn the printer off.</p> <p>Press ▼ to see step by step information.</p>
<p>BAD OPTIONAL TRAY CONNECTION</p>	<p>The 500-sheet input tray is not making proper connection with the printer.</p>	<p>1. Verify that the printer is on a level surface.</p> <p>2. Turn the printer off.</p>

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Reseat the printer on the 500-sheet input tray. 4. Turn the printer on after reseating the 500-sheet input tray.
Calibrating...	The printer is calibrating.	No action necessary.
Canceling...	The printer is in the process of canceling a job. The message will continue to be displayed while the job is stopped, the paper path flushed, and any remaining incoming data on the active data channel is received and discarded.	No action necessary.
CARD SLOT X NOT FUNCTIONAL	The flash card in slot X is not working correctly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Remove the card from the slot indicated and replace with a new card.
Checking paper path	The engine is turning its rollers to check for possible paper jams.	No action necessary.
Checking printer	The engine is doing an internal test.	No action necessary.
CHOSEN PERSONALITY NOT AVAILABLE To continue press ✓ alternates with CHOSEN PERSONALITY NOT AVAILABLE For help press ?	PJL encountered a request for a personality that did not exist in the printer. The job is aborted and no pages will be printed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ? for detailed information. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. 3. Reprint using the correct driver for the device.
CLEANING DISK X% COMPLETE	A storage device is being cleaned. Do not turn the printer off. When the process is complete, the printer will automatically restart.	No action necessary.
Cleaning...	A cleaning page is being processed.	No action necessary.
Clearing event log	This message is displayed while the event log is cleared. The printer will exit the MENUS once the event log has been cleared.	No action necessary.
Clearing paper path	The printer jammed or detected misplaced paper when turned on. The printer is attempting to eject jammed pages automatically.	No action necessary.
CLOSE FRONT COVERS For help press ?	The top cover needs to be closed.	Close front covers.  NOTE This message might also appear if the fuser is missing or incorrectly installed. Ensure that the fuser is correctly installed.
Close top cover.	The top cover of the printer is open.	Close the top cover.




Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
Creating... CLEANING PAGE DATA RECEIVED To print last page press ✓ alternates with Ready To print last page press ✓	This message is displayed while a cleaning page is being generated. When the page is complete, the control panel display backs up one screen to the PRINT QUALITY menu. The printer received data and is waiting for a form feed. When the printer receives another file, the message should disappear.	No action necessary. When the page is printed, follow the instructions printed on the cleaning page to process the page. Press ✓ to continue printing.
DATE/TIME	Prompt for setting the printer date and time. Default format is [YYYY]/[MMM]/[DD] [HH]-[MM].	To change, press ✓ and follow the time and date prompts.
DELETING PRIVATE JOBS Deleting...	The printer is deleting a private stored job. A PIN is required to delete a private job. The printer is currently deleting the stored job.	No action necessary. No action necessary.
DISK DEVICE FAILURE To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	A device failure has occurred on the specified drive. Printing may continue for jobs that do not require access to the disk drive.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 2. If the message persists, remove and re-install the EIO disk drive. 3. Turn the printer back on. 4. If the message still persists, replace the EIO disk drive.
DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	The printer received a PJP file system command that attempted to perform an illogical operation (for example, to download a file to a non-existent directory). Printing may continue.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on. 3. If the message reappears, there may be a problem with the software application.
DISK FILE SYSTEM IS FULL To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	The printer received a PJP file system command that attempted to store something on the file system but was unsuccessful because the file system is full.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the HP Web Jetadmin software to delete files from the EIO disk drive, or delete the stored job from the printer control panel. 2. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 3. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.
DISK IS WRITE PROTECTED To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	The file system device is protected and no new files can be written to it.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To enable writing to the disk, turn off write protection, using HP Web Jetadmin. 2. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 3. If the message persists, turn the printer off and then on.


Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
EIO DISK X NOT FUNCTIONAL For help press ?	The EIO disk in slot X is not working correctly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Remove the EIO disk from the slot indicated and replace with a new EIO disk drive.
EIO X disk initializing	The EIO disk device in slot X is initializing.	No action necessary.
EIO X disk spinning up	The EIO disk device in slot X is spinning up its platter.	No action necessary.
Event Log Empty	SHOW EVENT LOG was selected from the control panel, and the event log is empty.	No action necessary.
Genuine HP supplies installed	A new HP cartridge has been installed. The printer returns to the Ready state after approximately 10 seconds.	No action necessary.
INCORRECT [COLOR] CARTRIDGE alternates with For help press ? The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	A cartridge is installed in the wrong slot and the cover is closed.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the top and front covers. <div>  CAUTION The image transfer unit can be easily damaged. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Open the image transfer unit. 3. Remove the incorrect print cartridge. 4. Install the correct print cartridge. 5. Close image transfer unit and then close the top and front covers.
Incorrect PIN	The wrong PIN was entered. After three incorrect PIN entries, the printer will return to Ready .	Re-enter PIN correctly.
INCORRECT SUPPLIES For status press ✓ The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	At least one supply item is incorrectly positioned in the printer and another supply item is missing, incorrectly placed, out, or low.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ✓ to access the SUPPLIES STATUS menu. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to highlight the specific supply that has a problem. 3. Press ? to view help for the supply. 4. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.
Initializing permanent storage	Displayed when the printer is turned on to show that permanent storage is being initialized.	No action necessary.
Initializing...	This message is displayed when the printer is turned on, as soon as the individual tasks begin initialization.	No action necessary.
INSERT OR CLOSE TRAY X For help press ?	Tray XX must be inserted or closed before the current job can be printed.	Close the tray indicated.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
INSTALL FUSER	The fuser is not installed or is not installed correctly.	Confirm that the fuser is installed in the printer and is fully seated. Press ▼ to see step by step information.
INSTALL SUPPLIES For status press ✓ The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	At least one supply item is missing or is not correctly seated in the printer and another supply item is missing, incorrectly placed, out, or low. Insert the supply item or make sure the installed supply item is fully seated.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ✓ to access the SUPPLIES STATUS menu. 2. Press ▲ and ▼ to highlight the specific supply that has a problem. 3. Press ? to view help for the supply. 4. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.
INSTALL TRANSFER UNIT	The transfer unit is not installed or is not installed correctly.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ✓ to access the SUPPLIES STATUS menu. 2. Press ▼ to highlight the transfer unit. 3. Press ? to view help. 4. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions.
INSUFFICIENT MEMORY TO LOAD FONTS/DATA For help press ? alternates with Device To continue press ✓	<p>The device does not have enough memory to load the data, such as fonts or macros from the location specified. Device can be one of the following:</p> <p>INTERNAL = ROM directly on the formatter board</p> <p>CARD SLOT X = font card in slot X</p> <p>DIMMS</p> <p>EIO X DISK = removable hard disk installed in EIO slot X</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To use the device without the data, press ✓. 2. To solve the problem, add more memory to the device. DDR SDRAM Memory: 128MB, (Q2630A) or 256MB (Q2631A).
Internal disk initializing	The internal disk device is initializing.	No action necessary.
INTERNAL DISK NOT FUNCTIONAL	The internal disk is not working correctly.	Turn the printer off then on. If the error persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 .
Internal disk spinning up	The internal disk is spinning up. This message generally appears for approximately 15 seconds when the printer emerges from sleep mode. Jobs can still print, but jobs that require disk access, such as stored jobs, must wait until the disk is initialized.	No action necessary.
LOAD TRAY 1: <TYPE> <SIZE> For help press ?	This message appears when Tray 1 is selected but is not loaded, and no other paper trays are available for use.	<p>Load the correct paper in Tray 1 and press ✓ to continue.</p> <p>If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded.</p>
LOAD TRAY 1: <TYPE> <SIZE>	Tray 1 is loaded and configured for a type and size other than the one specified in the job.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the correct paper is loaded, press ✓. 2. Otherwise, remove the incorrect paper and load Tray 1 with the specified paper.


Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
To continue press ✓ alternates with LOAD TRAY 1: <TYPE> <SIZE> For help press ?		3. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded. 4. Confirm that the media guides are in the correct position. 5. To use another tray, remove paper from Tray 1 and then press ✓.
LOAD TRAY 1: <TYPE> <SIZE> To use another tray press ✓ Alternates with LOAD TRAY 1: <TYPE> <SIZE> For help press ?	This message appears when Tray 1 is selected but is not loaded, and other paper trays are available for use.	1. Load the correct paper in the tray. 2. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded. 3. Otherwise, select another tray.
LOAD TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] For help press ?	This message appears when Tray XX is selected but is not loaded, and no other paper trays are available for use.	Load the correct paper in the tray and press ✓ to continue.
LOAD TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] To use another tray press ✓ alternates with LOAD TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] For help press ?	Tray XX is either empty or configured for a type and size other than specified in the job, and another paper tray is available.	1. Load the paper tray with the specified media. 2. Confirm that the media guides are in the correct position. 3. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded. 4. To use another tray, press ✓.
Loading program X DO NOT POWER OFF	Programs and fonts can be stored on the printer's file system and are loaded into RAM when the printer is turned on. The number XX specifies a sequence number indicating the current program being loaded.	No action necessary. Do not turn the printer off.
MANUALLY FEED <TYPE> <SIZE> alternates with To use another tray press ✓	The job specifies manual feed, but Tray 1 is empty. Another tray is available.	Add paper to Tray 1 or press ✓ to select another tray.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
MANUALLY FEED [TYPE] [SIZE] To continue press ✓	A job was sent specifying MANUAL FEED and Tray 1 is empty. No other tray is available.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Load Tray 1 with the correct paper and press ✓ to continue. 2. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded.
MANUALLY FEED [TYPE] [SIZE] To continue press ✓ alternates with MANUALLY FEED [TYPE] [SIZE] For help press ?	The job specifies MANUAL FEED , but Tray 1 is already loaded and configured for a type or size other than that specified in the job.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Load the correct paper in Tray 1. 2. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded. 3. Otherwise, press ✓ to select another tray.
MANUALLY FEED [TYPE] [SIZE] To use another tray press ✓ alternates with MANUALLY FEED [TYPE] [SIZE] For help press ?	A job was sent that specified MANUAL FEED and Tray 1 is empty. Another tray is available.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Load Tray 1 with the correct paper. 2. If prompted, confirm the size and type of paper loaded. 3. Otherwise, press ✓ to select another tray.
MANUALLY FEED OUTPUT STACK alternates with Then press ✓ to print second sides	The even-numbered pages of a manual two-sided document have been printed and the printer is waiting for the output stack to be inserted for the odd-numbered pages to be printed.	Follow the instructions on the Print on Both Sides instruction dialog box at the computer. OR Press ? for help at the printer.
MIXED PAPER SIZES IN JOB TO STAPLE	The job contains different paper sizes and cannot be stapled. The status light is solid green.	Use a uniform paper size when sending jobs to the stapler.
Moving solenoid To exit press Stop	The printer is executing a component test and the component selected is a solenoid.	No action necessary.
Moving solenoid and motor To exit press Stop	The printer is executing a component test and the components selected are the solenoid and the motor.	No action necessary.
No job to cancel	There are no stored jobs that can be cancelled.	No action necessary.
NO STORED JOBS	No jobs stored on the EIO disk. This message is displayed when the user enters the RETRIEVE JOB menu and there are no jobs to retrieve.	No action necessary.


Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
NON HP SUPPLY IN USE alternates with Ready The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges, but the level of any refilled cartridge will not be shown.	The printer has detected that a non-HP print cartridge is currently installed.	<p>If you believe you purchased an HP cartridge, please call the HP fraud hotline (1–877–219–3183, toll-free in North America).</p> <div>  CAUTION Any printer repair required as a result of using non-HP cartridges is not covered under HP warranty. </div>
ORDER [COLOR] CARTRIDGE The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges. alternates with Ready The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	<p>The identified print cartridge is nearing the end of its useful life. The printer is ready and will continue for the estimated number of pages indicated. Estimated pages remaining is based upon the historical page coverage of this printer.</p> <p>Printing will continue until a supply needs to be replaced.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? to view help for the message. Obtain the part number for the print cartridge indicated. Order a print cartridge <div>  NOTE Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information. </div>
ORDER FUSER KIT LESS THAN XXX PAGES For help press ? alternates with Ready	<p>The fuser is near the end of its life. The printer is ready and will continue for the estimated number of pages indicated.</p> <p>Printing will continue until a supply needs to be replaced.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ? to view help for the message. Obtain the part number for the fuser kit. Order the fuser kit. <div>  NOTE Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information. </div>
ORDER SUPPLIES alternates with Ready For help press ? The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	<p>More than one supply item is low.</p> <p>Printing will continue until a supply needs to be replaced.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press Menu to access the menus. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight INFORMATION, and then press ✓. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight SUPPLIES STATUS, and then press ✓. Press ▲ or ▼ to highlight a supply that needs to be ordered. Press ? to access help for the supply. Obtain a part number from help. Order the supply. Repeat the previous steps as necessary for each supply that needs to be ordered. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
ORDER TRANSFER KIT LESS THAN XXX PAGES For help press ? alternates with Ready	The transfer unit is near end of life. Printing can continue.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Press ? to view help for the message. 2. Obtain the transfer kit part number from help. 3. Order the transfer kit. <div>  NOTE Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information. </div>
Paused To return to Ready press RESUME key	The printer is paused, and there are no error messages pending at the display. The I/O continues receiving data until memory is full.	Press the Stop key.
Performing PRINT/STOP TEST	The printer is performing a print/stop test.	No action necessary.
Performing upgrade	A firmware upgrade is in process.	Do not turn the printer off until the printer returns to Ready .
Performing... PAPER PATH TEST	The printer is performing a paper path test.	No action necessary.
Please wait	The printer is in the process of clearing data.	No action necessary.
PRINTING STOPPED To continue press ✓	This message is displayed when a Print/Stop Test is run and time expires.	Press ✓ to continue printing.
Printing... CMYK Samples	This message displays while the printer CMYK samples page is being generated.	No action necessary.
Printing... CONFIGURATION	The printer is generating the configuration page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... DEMO PAGE	The printer is generating the demo page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... DIAGNOSTICS PAGE	The printer is generating the diagnostics page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... ENGINE TEST	The printer is generating the engine test page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... Event Log	The printer is generating the event log page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... FILE DIRECTORY	The printer is generating the mass storage directory page. The printer will return to the Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
Printing... FONT LIST	The printer is generating either the PCL or PS personality typeface list. The printer will return to the Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... MENU MAP	The printer is generating the printer menu map. The printer will return to the Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... PQ TROUBLESHOOTING	The printer is generating the print quality troubleshooting pages. The printer will return to the Ready state when the pages are printed.	Follow the instructions on the printed pages.
Printing... REGISTRATION PAGE	The printer is generating the registration page. The printer will return to the SET REGISTRATION menu when the page is completed.	Follow the instructions on the printed pages.
Printing... RGB Samples	This message displays while the printer RGB samples page is being generated.	No action necessary.
Printing... SUPPLIES STATUS	The printer is generating the supplies status page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Printing... Usage Page	The printer is generating the usage page. The printer will return to the online Ready state when the page is completed.	No action necessary.
Processing duplex job Do not grab paper until job completes	Paper temporarily comes into the output bin while printing a duplex job. Do not attempt to remove the pages until the job is complete.	Do not grab paper as it temporarily comes into the output bin. The message will disappear when the job is finished.
Processing...	The printer is currently processing a job but is not yet picking pages. When paper motion begins, this message will be replaced by a message that indicates which tray the job is being printed from.	No action necessary.
Processing... copy <X> of <Y>	The printer is currently processing or printing collated copies. The message indicates that copy X of Y total copies is currently being processed.	No action necessary.
Processing... from tray xx	The printer is actively processing a job from the designated tray.	No action necessary.
Processing... INTERMITTENT MODE For help press ?	This message might be displayed during periods of heavy usage if the printer becomes overheated. If this occurs, the printer enters a mode in which it prints for one minute and pauses for one minute. This cycle continues until the operating temperature stabilizes.	Press ▼ to see step by step information.
RAM DISK SYSTEM IS FULL	The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to store something on the file system but was unsuccessful because the file system is full.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To clear the message, press the ✓ key. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.


Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready		 NOTE This will also delete any files saved in RAM.
RAM DISK DEVICE FAILURE To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	A device failure has occurred on the specified drive.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on. 3. If the message still persists, contact HP Support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
RAM DISK FILE OPERATION FAILED To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	<p>The printer received a PJL file system command that attempted to perform an illogical operation (for example, to download a file to a non-existent directory).</p> <p>Printing may continue.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 2. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on. 3. If the message reappears, there may be a problem with the software application.
RAM DISK IS WRITE PROTECTED To clear press ✓ alternates with Ready	The file system device is protected and no new files can be written to it.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. To enable writing to the RAM disk, turn off write protection, using HP Web Jetadmin software. 2. To clear the message, press the ✓ key. 3. If the message persists, turn the printer off then on.
Ready The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	The printer is online and ready for data. No status or device attendance messages are pending at the display.	No action necessary.
Ready Diagnostics mode To exit press Stop	The printer is in a special diagnostics mode.	Press the Stop key to exit the special diagnostics mode. OR No action is necessary.
Ready IP Address:	The printer is online and ready.	No action necessary.
Receiving upgrade	A firmware upgrade is in progress.	Do not turn the printer off until the printer returns to Ready .
REINSERT DUPLEXER	The duplexer has been removed.	Press ▼ to see step by step information.
REMOVE ALL PRINT CARTRIDGES To exit press Stop	The printer is executing a component test and the component selected is Belt Only.	Remove all print cartridges.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
<p>Remove at least one print cartridge.</p> <p>To exit press Stop</p>	<p>The printer is executing a disable cartridge check or component test where the component selected is the cartridge motor.</p>	<p>Remove one print cartridge.</p>
<p>REPLACE <COLOR> CARTRIDGE</p> <p>The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>To continue press ✓</p> <p>The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.</p>	<p>The identified print cartridge has reached the end of life and the COLOR SUPPLY OUT setting in the SYSTEM SETUP menu is set to STOP AT LOW. Printing can continue.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Order the appropriate print cartridge. 2. To continue, press ✓. 3. Open the front and top covers and then open the image transfer unit. <div>  <p>CAUTION The image transfer unit can be easily damaged.</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Remove the identified print cartridge. 5. Install a new print cartridge. 6. Close the image transfer unit and the top and front covers. 7. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
<p>REPLACE FUSER KIT</p> <p>For help press ?</p>	<p>The fuser kit has reached the end of its life. Replace the fuser kit. Printing can continue although print quality might be reduced.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the top cover. 2. Grasp the purple handles on the fuser unit. 3. Remove the old fuser unit from the printer. 4. Install a new fuser unit and secure with thumb screws. 5. Close the top cover. 6. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
<p>REPLACE FUSER KIT</p> <p>For help press ?</p> <p>alternates with</p> <p>REPLACE FUSER KIT</p> <p>To continue press ✓</p>	<p>The fuser is nearing the end of its useful life and the REPLACE SUPPLIES setting in the SYSTEM SETUP menu is set to STOP AT LOW. Printing can continue.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Order the fuser kit. 2. To continue printing, press ✓. 3. To replace the fuser kit, perform the following steps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open the top cover. • Grasp the purple handles on the fuser unit. • Remove the old fuser unit from the printer. • Install the new fuser unit.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Close the top cover. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
REPLACE STAPLER CARTRIDGE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The stapler cartridge contains fewer than 30 staples and should not be used. The stapler cartridge needs to be replaced. There is no stapler cartridge installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace the stapler cartridge. For more information, see Replacing the stapler cartridge. Install a stapler cartridge.
REPLACE SUPPLIES For status press ✓ The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	Multiple supplies are at the end of their useful life. If the supplies affected are cartridges only, printing has stopped because the REPLACE SUPPLIES setting in the SYSTEM SETUP menu is set to STOP AT OUT . If the affected supplies are cartridges only, printing will not continue.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to access the SUPPLIES STATUS menu. Press ▲ and ▼ to highlight the specific supply that has a problem. Press ? to view help for the supply. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
REPLACE SUPPLIES Override in use alternates with <Current status message>	<p>The printer is set to continue printing even though a print cartridge has reached end of life.</p> <div>  <div> CAUTION Using the Override mode may result in unsatisfactory print quality. HP recommends replacing the supply when the REPLACE SUPPLY message is displayed. HP Supplies Premium Protection Warranty coverage ends when a supply is used in Override mode. </div> </div>	Press ▼ to see step by step information.
REPLACE SUPPLIES To continue press ✓ The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	Multiple supplies are at the end of their useful life and the REPLACE SUPPLIES setting in the SYSTEM SETUP menu is set to STOP AT LOW .	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Press ✓ to access the SUPPLIES STATUS menu. Press ▲ and ▼ to highlight the specific supply that has a problem. Press ? to view help for the supply. Press ▲ and ▼ to step through the instructions. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
REPLACE SUPPLIES	This message is generated when a print cartridge (or print cartridges) has reached the	Press ▼ to see step by step information.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
Using black only alternates with <Current status message>	out condition and the printer is set to AUTOCONTINUE BLACK.	
REPLACE TRANSFER KIT For help press ?	The transfer unit is at end of life. Printing can continue but print quality might be reduced.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the top and front cover. 2. Lower the transfer unit by pulling the green handle at the top of the unit downward. 3. Depress the small blue latches located on either side of the bottom of the transfer unit and lift the unit out of the printer. 4. Install the new transfer unit. 5. Close the front and top covers. 6. Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
REPLACE TRANSFER KIT For help press ? alternates with REPLACE TRANSFER KIT To continue press ✓	The transfer unit is nearing the end of its useful life and the REPLACE SUPPLIES setting in the SYSTEM SETUP menu is set to STOP AT LOW.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Order the transfer kit. 2. To continue printing, press ✓. 3. To replace the transfer kit, perform the following steps: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open the top and front cover. • Lower the transfer unit by pulling the green handle at the top of the unit downward. • Depress the small blue latches located on either side of the bottom of the transfer unit and lift the unit out of the printer. • Install the new transfer unit. • Close the front and top covers. • Supplies ordering information is also available from the embedded Web server. See Using the embedded Web server for more information.
Request accepted please wait	The printer has accepted a request to print an internal page, but the current job must finish printing before the internal page will print.	No action necessary.
Resend upgrade	The firmware upgrade was not completed successfully.	Attempt upgrade again.
Restoring... [accessory #]	The printer is restoring external accessory settings in response to a user request.	No action necessary.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
Restoring...	The printer is restoring settings. This message is displayed during the execution of a restore action, such as RESTORE COLOR VALUES .	No action necessary.
Restoring... factory settings	The printer is restoring factory settings.	No action necessary.
RESTRICTED FROM PRINTING IN COLOR alternates with Ready	The printer is set to COLOR IF ALLOWED and you or your software program are not authorized to print in color.	Get your network administrator to set the user or program permissions that will allow you to print in color.
Rotating <COLOR> motor To exit press Stop	A component test is in progress; the component selected is the <color> cartridge motor.	Press Stop when ready to stop this test.
Rotating motor To exit press Stop	The printer is executing a component test and the component selected is a motor.	Press Stop when ready to stop this test.
SANITIZING DISK X% COMPLETE DO NOT POWER OFF	A storage device is being sanitized. Do not turn the printer off. When the process is complete, the printer will automatically restart.	No action necessary.
Setting saved	A menu selection has been saved.	No action necessary.
SIZE MISMATCH TRAY XX=[SIZE] For help press ? alternates with Ready	The tray is loaded with media longer or shorter in the feed direction than the size configured for the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust the side and rear media guides against the paper. 2. If necessary, press ✓ after the tray is closed to change the paper size or type configuration to match the size or type in the tray.
SLEEP MODE ON	The printer is in sleep mode. A button press, receipt of printable data, or an error condition will clear this message.	No action necessary.
STACKER BIN FULL	The stapler/stacker output bin is full. The amber light on the stapler/stacker is blinking.	Remove paper from the stapler/stacker output bin.
STACKER TOP COVER OPEN	The jam access door is open. The stapler/stacker cannot operate in this condition. The amber light on the stapler/stacker is blinking.	Close the jam access door.
STACKER TOP COVER OPEN	The top cover of the stacker unit is open. The unit cannot function.	Close the top cover and resend the job.
STAPLER DOOR OPEN	The stapler cartridge door is open. The stapler/stacker cannot operate in this condition. The amber light on the stapler/stacker is blinking.	Close the stapler cartridge door.
STAPLER DOOR OPEN	The top cover of the stapler unit is open. The unit cannot function.	Close the top cover and resend the job.

Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
STAPLER LOW ON STAPLES	Fewer than 20 usable staples remain in the stapler cartridge. The status light is solid green.	Order and install a new stapler cartridge. For information about replacing the stapler cartridge, see Replacing the stapler cartridge .
TOO MANY PAGES IN JOB TO STAPLE	The job contains more than the specified number of sheets for the media type being used, and cannot be stapled. When the maximum number of sheets for a specific media type is reached, the job is ejected and handled as a stacked job.	To ensure that documents are properly stapled, ensure that the job does not exceed the specified number of sheets for the selected media.
Transfer unit can be easily damaged. alternates with For help press ? The supplies gauge will display the consumption levels of print cartridges.	The cartridge is either not installed or not correctly installed in the printer.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open the top and front covers. <div>  CAUTION The image transfer unit can be easily damaged. </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Open the image transfer unit. 3. Insert the print cartridge and make sure that it is fully seated. 4. Close the image transfer unit and then close the top and front covers. 5. If the error persists, contact HP support at http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
TRAY X EMPTY [TYPE] [SIZE] alternates with Ready	The specified tray is empty and the current job does not need this tray to print.	Refill the tray at a convenient time.
TRAY X OPEN For help press ? alternates with Ready	The specified tray is open or not closed completely.	Close the tray.
TRAY XX SIZE= <SIZE> Setting saved	The size selected from the menu has been saved.	No action is necessary.
TYPE MISMATCH TRAY XX=[TYPE] For help press ? alternates with Ready	The media type loaded in the tray does not match the media type configured for the tray.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Adjust the side and rear guides against the paper. 2. If necessary, press ✓ after the tray is closed to change the paper size or type to match the paper loaded in the tray.
Unable to mopy job alternates with Processing...	The print job cannot be moped because of a memory, disk, or configuration problem. Only one copy will be produced.	Install additional memory in the printer or install a disk drive in the printer.

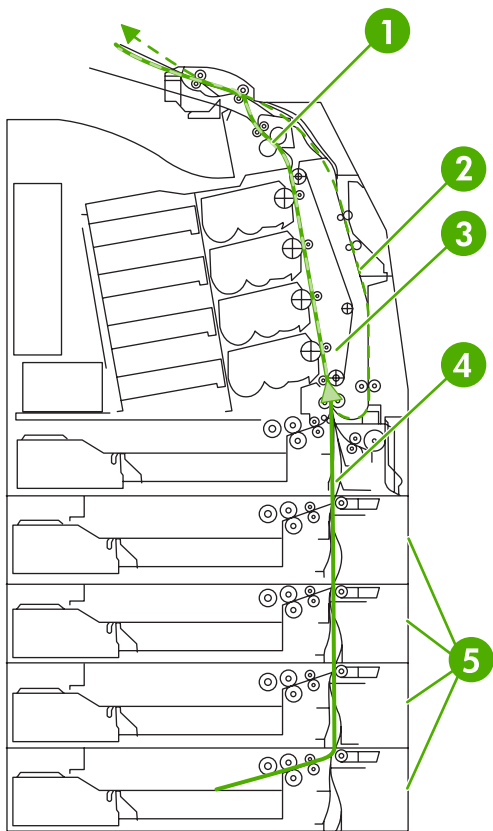
Control panel message	Description	Recommended action
Unable to Store Job JOB NAME alternates with Processing...	A job cannot be stored because of a memory, disk, or configuration problem.	Install additional memory in the printer, or install a disk drive into the printer. If a disk drive is installed, delete previously stored print jobs.
USE TRAY XX [TYPE] [SIZE] To change press ▲/▼ To use press ▼	The printer is offering a selection of alternate media to use for the print job.	1. View tray configurations (type and size) using ▲ and ▼. 2. Press ▼ to select a tray to use. 3. To return to the previous message, press Back .
Wait for printer to reinitialize	RAM disk settings have been changed before the printer automatically restarts, or external device modes have changed or the printer is coming out of the diagnostics mode and will automatically restart.	No action necessary.
Waiting for tray X to lift	The printer is waiting for Tray 2 or an optional tray to lift.	No action necessary.
Warming up	The printer is coming out of sleep mode. Printing will continue as soon as warmup is completed.	No action necessary.

Paper jams

Use this illustration to troubleshoot paper jams in the printer. For instructions on clearing paper jams, see [Clearing jams](#).



NOTE All areas of the printer that might need to be opened to clear jams are equipped with green handles for rapid identification.



1	Top cover area
2	Duplex path
3	Paper path
4	Input path
5	Paper trays

Paper jam recovery

This printer automatically provides paper jam recovery, a feature that allows you to set whether the printer should attempt to automatically reprint jammed pages. The options are:

- **AUTO** — Printer will automatically attempt to reprint jammed pages. This is the default.
- **OFF** — Printer will not attempt to reprint jammed pages.
- **On** — Printer will attempt to reprint jammed pages.



NOTE During the recovery process, the printer might reprint several good pages that were printed before the paper jam occurred. Be sure to remove any duplicated pages.

To disable paper jam recovery

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **SYSTEM SETUP**.
5. Press **✓** to select **SYSTEM SETUP**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **JAM RECOVERY**.
7. Press **✓** to select **JAM RECOVERY**.
8. Press **▼** to highlight **OFF**.
9. Press **✓** to select **OFF**.
10. Press the **Menu** button to return to the **Ready** state.

To improve print speed and increase memory resources, you might want to disable paper jam recovery. If paper jam recovery is disabled, the pages involved in a jam will not be reprinted.


Common causes of paper jams

The following table lists common causes of paper jams and suggested solutions for resolving them.

Paper jams

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
When the printer is first installed, the protective insert does not eject properly.	See Jam in Tray 1 .
Print media does not meet HP-recommended media specifications.	Use only media that meets HP specifications. See Supported media weights and sizes .
A supply item is installed incorrectly, causing repeated jams.	Verify that all print cartridges, the transfer unit, and the fuser are correctly installed.
You are reloading paper that has already passed through a printer or copier.	Do not use media that has been previously printed on or copied.
An input tray is loaded incorrectly.	Remove media from the input tray and replace the media within the tray. Adjust the media width guide to hold the media firmly in place without bending it. See Configuring input trays .
Print media is skewed.	Input tray guides are not adjusted correctly. Adjust input tray guides so they hold media firmly in place without bending it. If media heavier than 105 g/m ² (28 lb) is loaded into Tray 2 and optional trays, the media might skew.
Print media is binding or sticking together.	Remove media, flex it, rotate it 180 degrees, or flip it over. Reload media into the input tray. Do not fan media.
Print media is removed before it settles into the output bin.	Reset the printer. Wait until the page completely settles in the output bin before removing it.
When duplexing, the print media is removed before the second side of the document is printed.	Reset the printer and print the document again. Wait until the page completely settles in the output bin before removing it.
Print media is in poor condition.	Replace the print media.
Print media is not picked up by the internal rollers from Tray 2 or an optional tray.	Remove the top sheet of media. If the media is heavier than 105 g/m ² (28 lb), it might not be picked from the tray.
Print media has rough or jagged edges.	Replace the media.
Print media is perforated or embossed.	This media does not separate easily. You might need to feed single sheets from Tray 1.
Printer supply items have reached the end of their useful life.	Check the printer control panel for messages prompting you to replace supplies, or print a supplies status page to verify the remaining life of the supplies. See Replacing supplies for more information.
Media was not stored correctly.	Replace the print media. Media should be stored in the original packaging in a controlled environment.

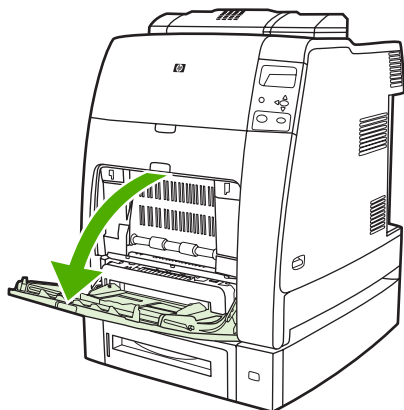
**NOTE** If the printer continues to jam, contact HP Customer Support or your authorized HP service provider. For more information, see <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Clearing jams

Each section below corresponds with a jam message that might appear on the control panel. Use these procedures to clear the jam.

Jam in Tray 1

1. Open Tray 1.

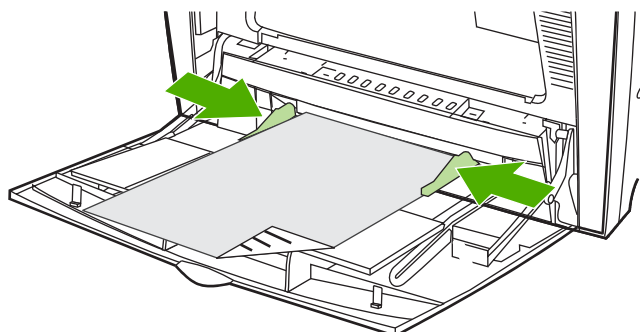


2. Remove loaded paper from Tray 1.
3. Reload paper in Tray 1 and check to make sure the media is loaded correctly.



NOTE Do not load media above the fill tabs.

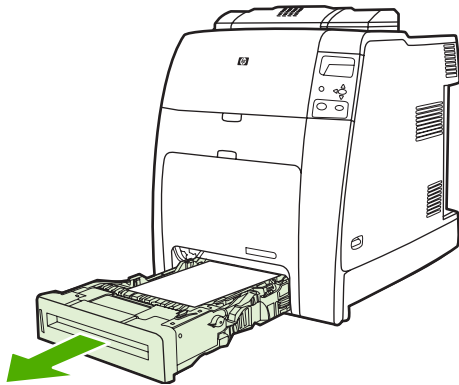
4. Confirm that the guides are in the correct position.



5. To continue printing, press **?**, and then press **✓**.

Jam in Tray 2 or optional trays

1. Pull out the tray indicated and place it on a flat surface. Make sure that the paper guides are in the correct position.

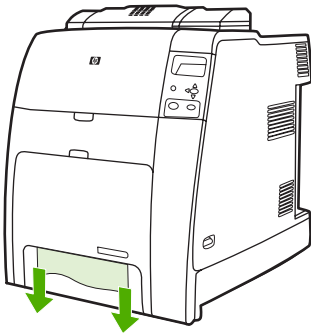


2. Remove any partially fed media. Grasp the media by both corners and pull down.



NOTE Use Tray 1 to avoid jams with heavier paper.

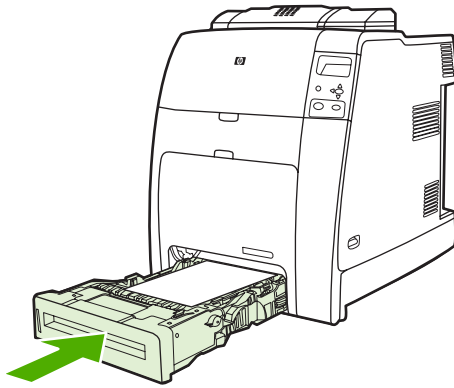
3. Inspect the media path to ensure that it is clear.



NOTE If the media tears, make sure that all media fragments are removed from the paper path before resuming printing.

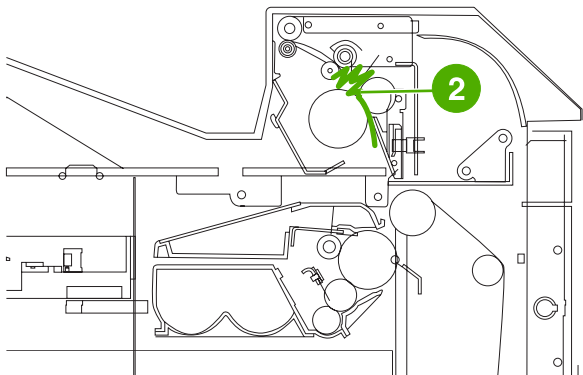
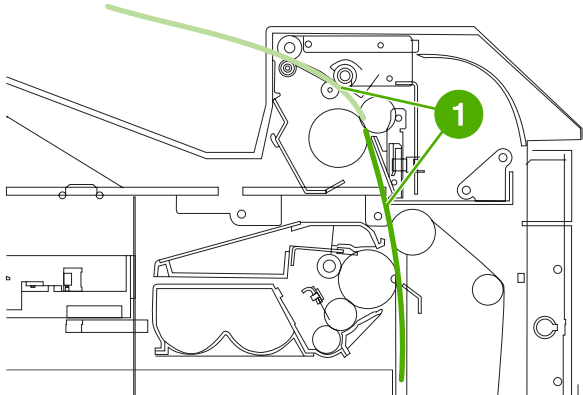
4. For jams that occur in an optional tray, check the trays above for jams as well. For example, if the jam occurs in Tray 4, also open Tray 2 and Tray 3 and remove any jammed paper.

5. Check to make sure the media is loaded correctly. Insert the tray into the printer. Make sure all trays are completely closed.



Jams in top cover area

Jams in the top cover occur in of the areas indicated in the figures below. Use the procedures in this section to clear a jam in this area.



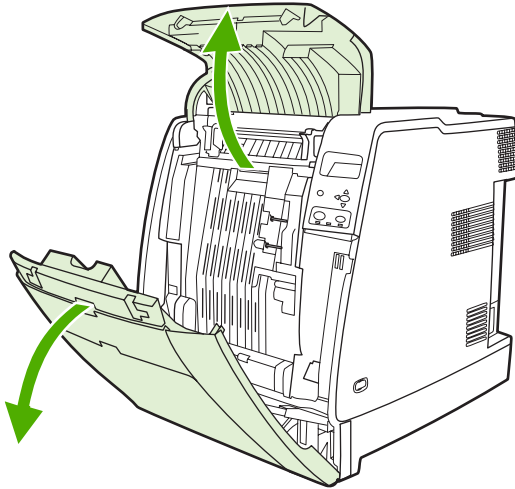
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Jammed paper |
| 2 | Crumpled paper in the fuser |

Clearing a jam in the top cover area

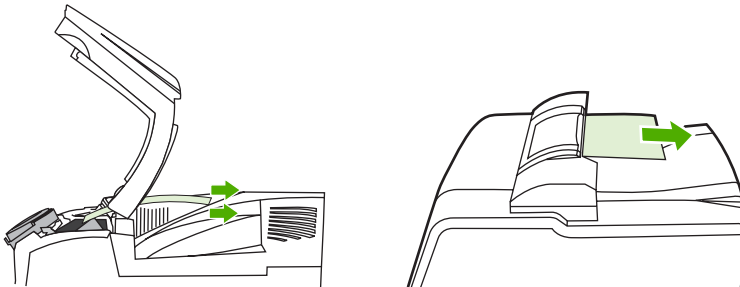


WARNING! Do not touch the fuser. It is hot and could cause burns! The fuser's operating temperature is 190°C (374°F). Wait ten minutes to allow the fuser to cool before touching the fuser.

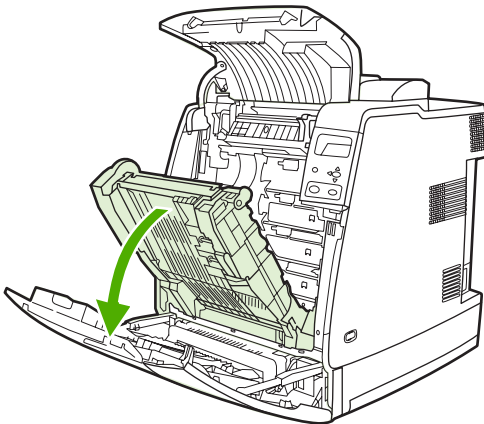
1. Open the top and front covers.



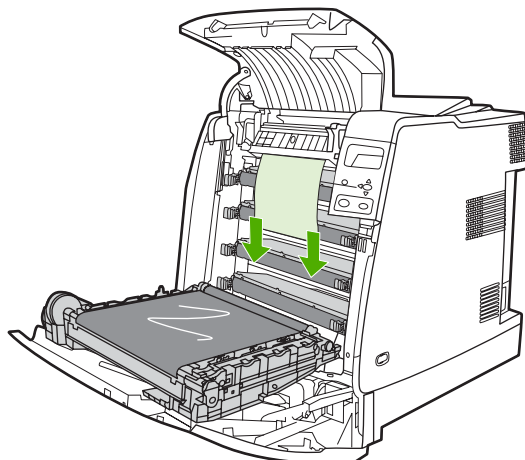
2. Grasp any visible media by both corners and pull to remove it.



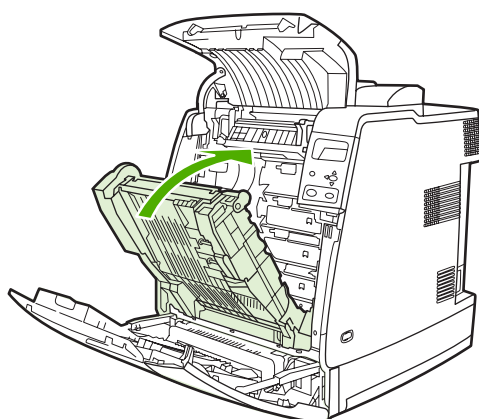
3. Grasp the green handle on the transfer unit and pull down.



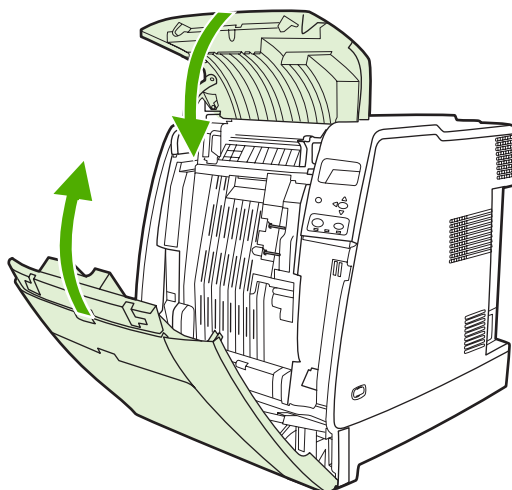
4. Grasp the media by both corners and pull down.



5. Close the transfer unit.

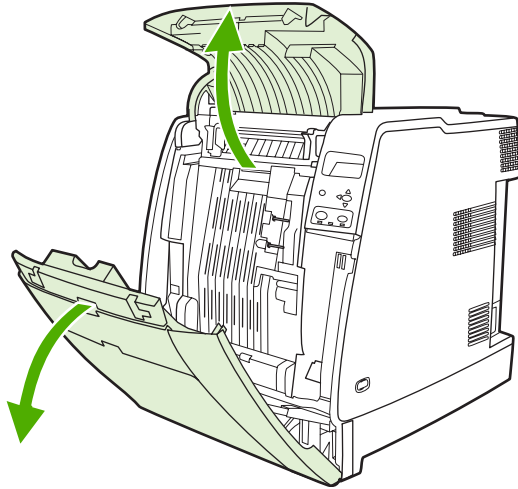


6. Close the top and front covers.

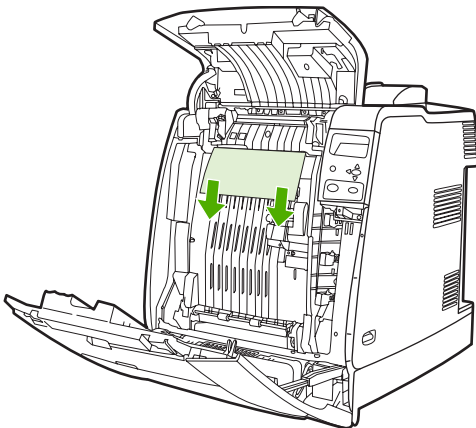


Clearing other jams

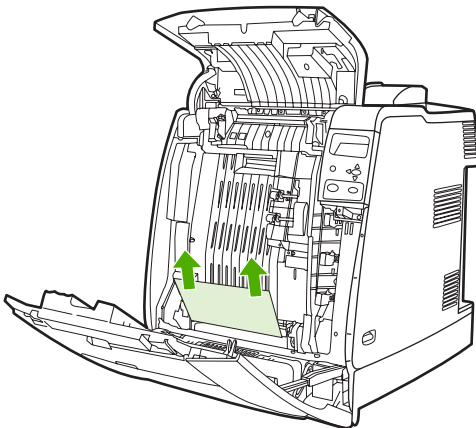
1. Using the handles, open the top and front covers.



2. If media is present, grasp the media by both corners and pull down.

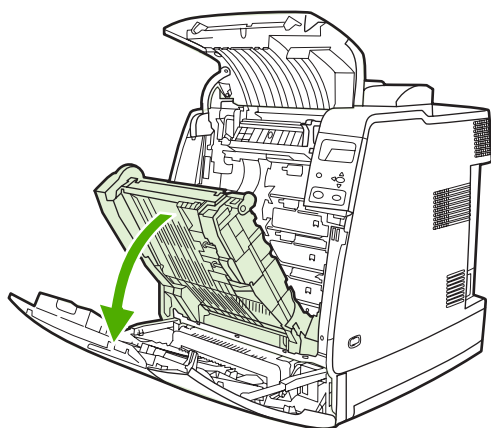


3. If media is present, grasp the media by both corners and pull up.

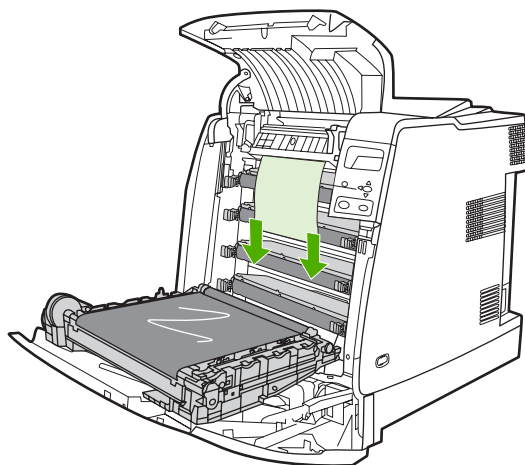


NOTE If no media is present at these locations, continue to the next step.

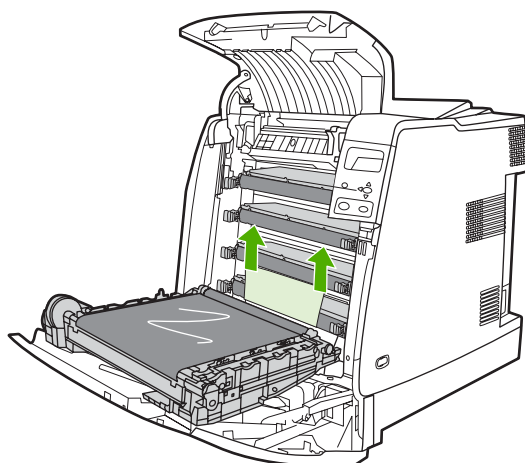
4. Grasp the green handle on the transfer unit and pull down.



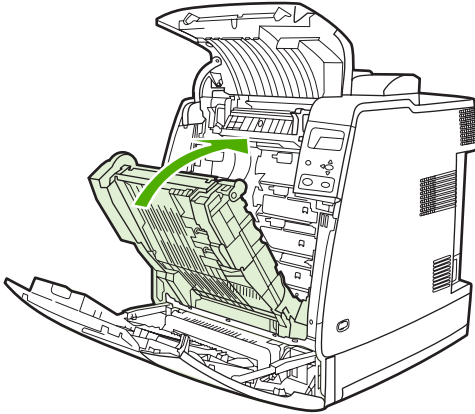
5. If media is present, grasp the media by both corners and pull down.



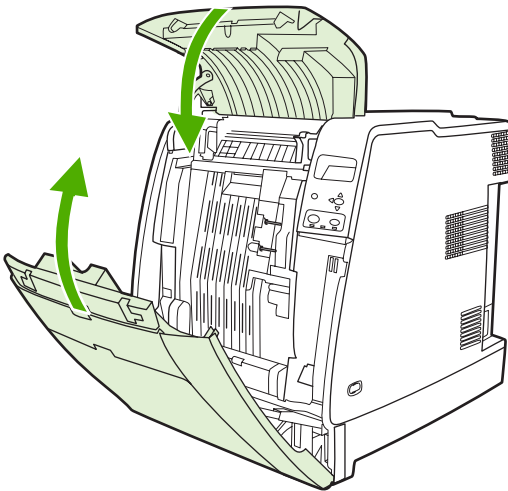
6. If media is present, grasp the media by both corners and pull up.



7. Close the transfer unit.



8. Close the top and front covers.



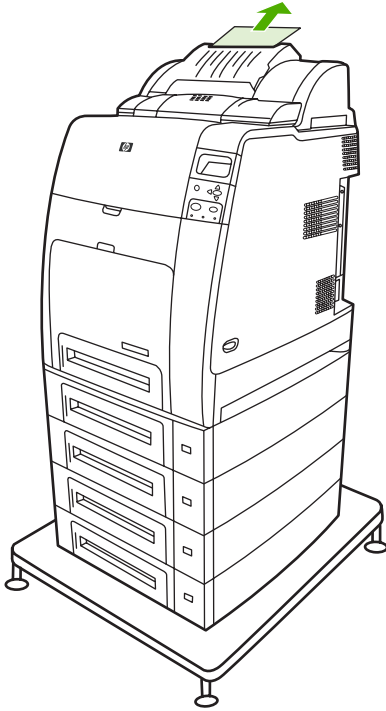
Jams in the stapler/stacker



NOTE After resolving any stapler/stacker jams, check that there are no jams in the printer itself. For more information, see [Clearing jams](#).

Clearing jams in the paper path

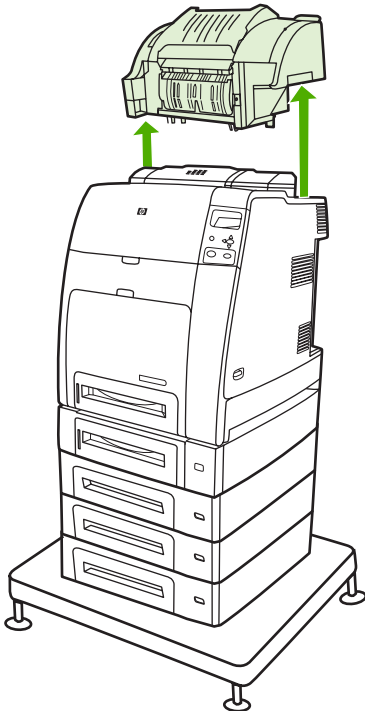
1. Remove any exposed jammed sheets.



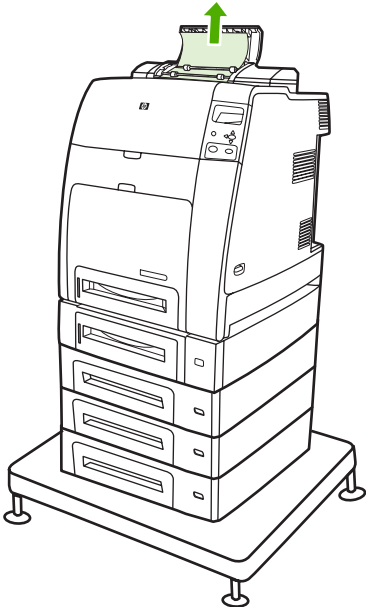
2. Grasp the stapler/stacker unit by its handles and lift it off the body of the printer.



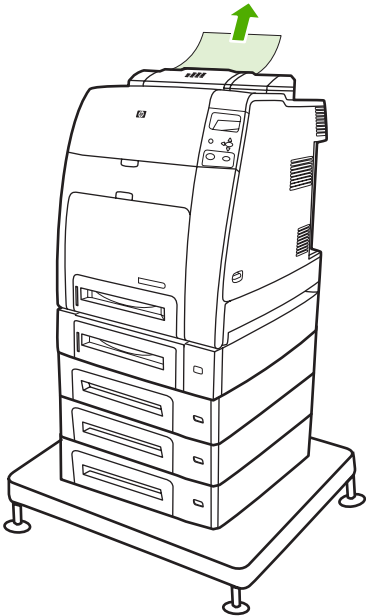
CAUTION The stapler/stacker unit weighs 9 kg (19.8 lb). For greater safety, you might wish to remove the stapler/stacker while standing at the rear of the printer.



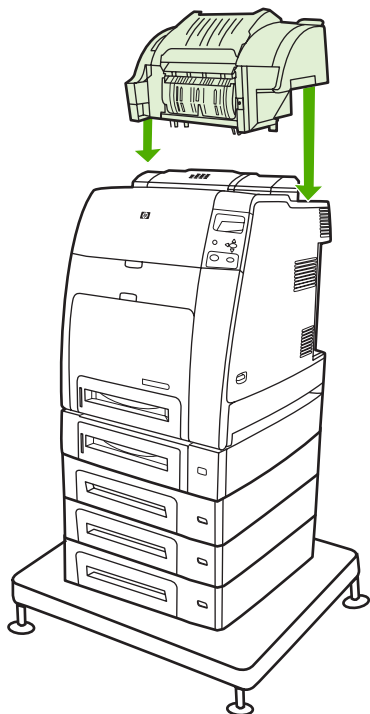
3. Set the stapler/stacker aside on a flat surface.
4. Remove any jammed sheets under the front cover of the duplexer.



5. Remove any jammed sheets from the rear of the duplexer.



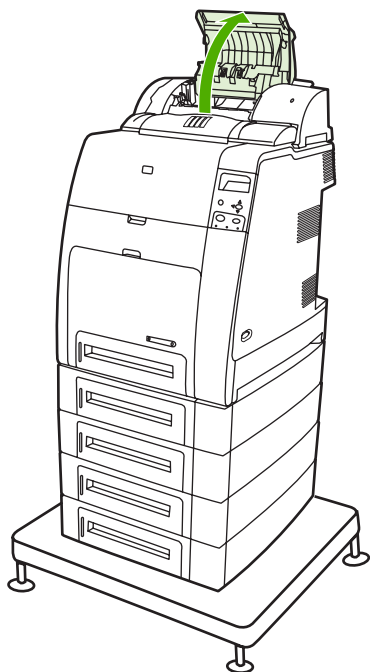
6. Place the stapler/stacker unit onto the printer.



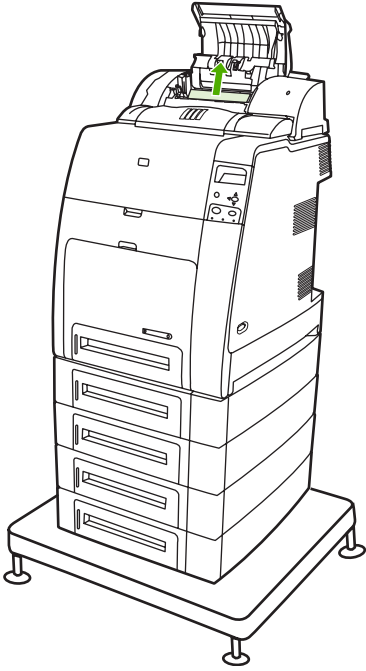
NOTE The output bin must be pushed down into the lowest position for printing to continue.

Clearing jams inside the stapler/stacker

1. Open the top cover of the stapler/stacker unit by the handles.



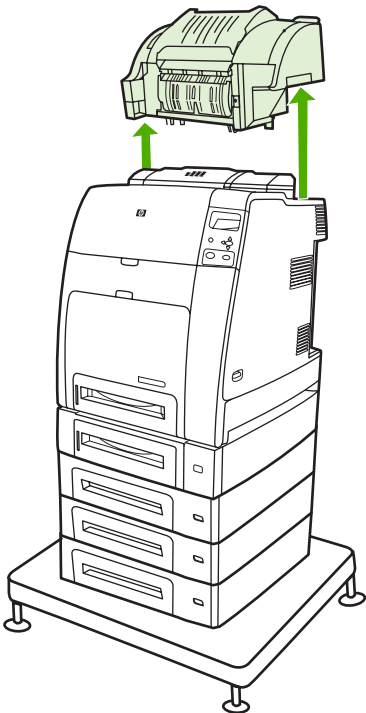
2. If jammed paper can be seen, pull it from the stapler/stacker. Close the stapler/stacker cover.



3. If a jammed page is only partially visible and cannot easily be removed, grasp the stapler/stacker unit by its handles and lift it off the body of the printer.

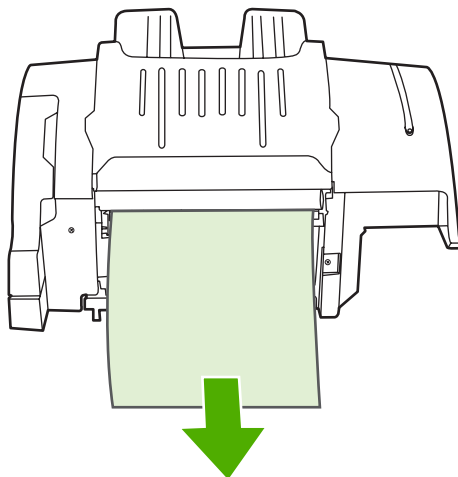


CAUTION The stapler/stacker unit weighs 9 kg (19.8 lb). For greater safety, you might wish to remove the stapler/stacker from the rear of the printer.

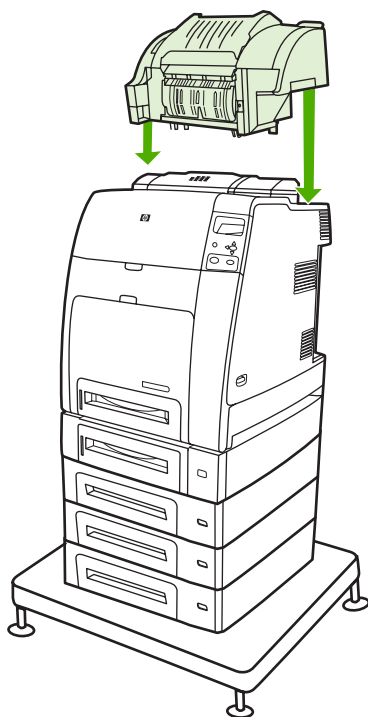


4. Set the stapler/stacker aside on a flat surface.

5. Remove any visible paper from the stapler/stacker.

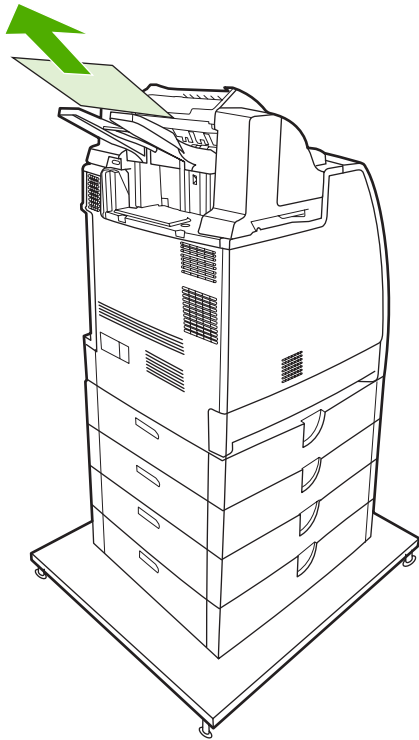


6. Place the stapler/stacker unit onto the printer.



Jams at the output bin

- ▲ Remove any jammed paper at the output bin.



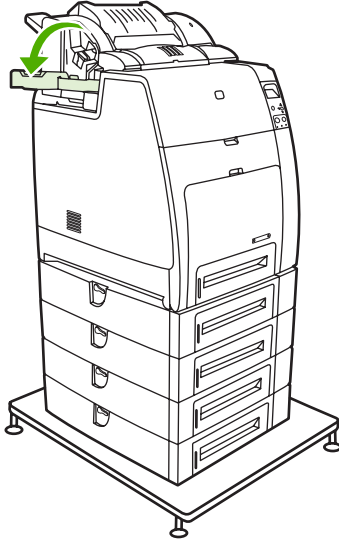
NOTE On all stapler/stacker jams, be sure that there is no jammed media in the duplexer path or inside the stapler/stacker or printer. See the other jam recovery procedures included in this section for assistance.

Staple jams

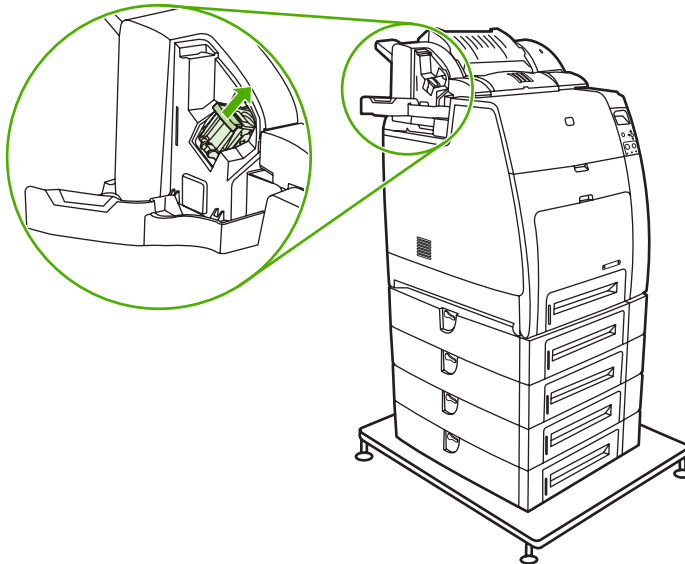


NOTE Clear staple jams when the message **13.XX.X JAM IN STAPLER** appears on the control panel display.

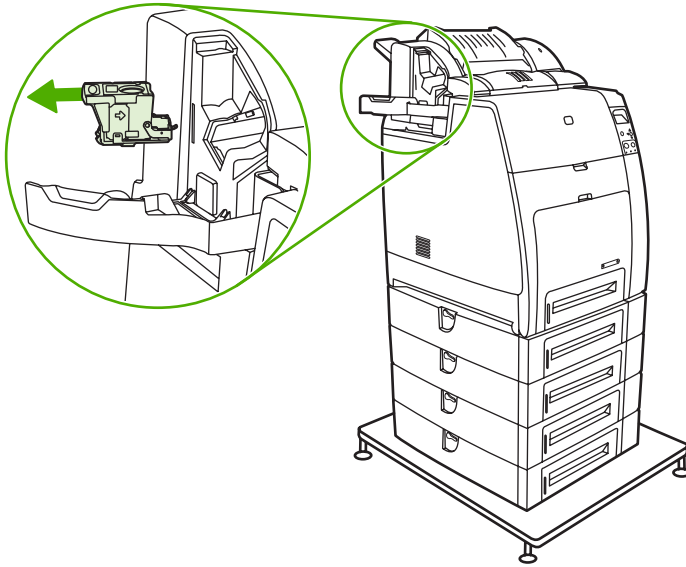
1. On the left side of the stapler/stacker, open the stapler cartridge cover by gently pulling it.



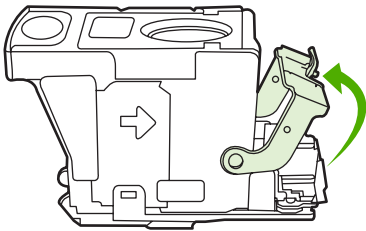
2. Grasp the stapler cartridge handle and pull up gently.



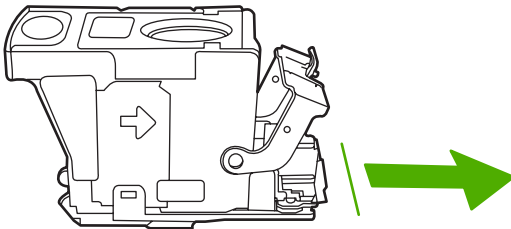
3. Twist the stapler cartridge gently in a counter-clockwise direction and pull it out.



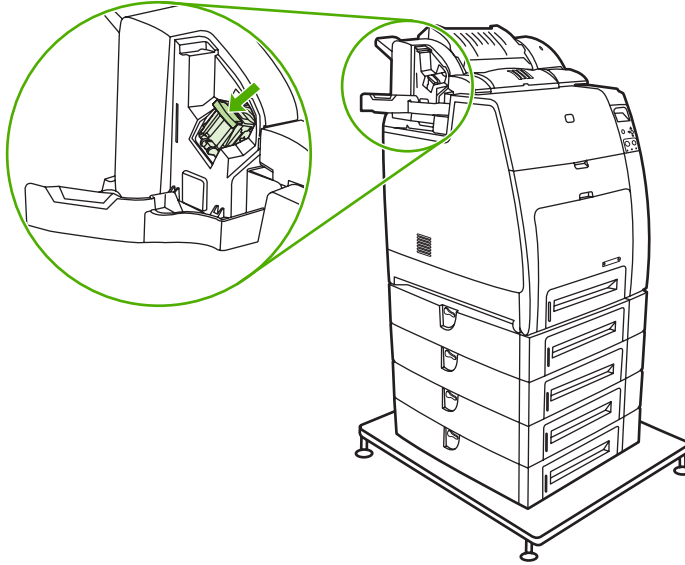
4. Lift the cover at the tip of the cartridge.



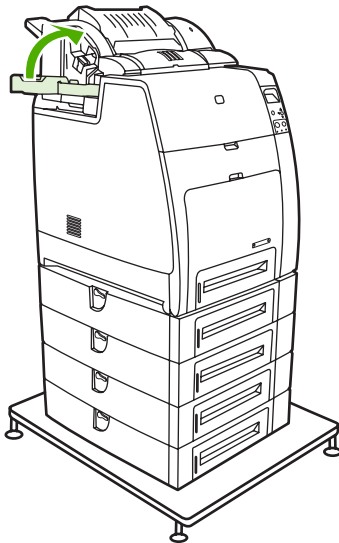
5. Remove the visible staple and close the cartridge cover.



6. Place the stapler cartridge in the stapler unit. Press it down until it snaps into place.



7. Close the stapler cartridge cover.



NOTE The stapler needs to reload after clearing a staple jam, so the first few documents (up to five) might not be stapled. The stapler/stacker might make a noise as the stapler reloads staples. The noise will stop after a few documents are stapled. If a print job is sent and the stapler is jammed or out of staples, the job will still print as long as the path to the stacker bin is not blocked.

Media-handling problems


Use only media that meets HP specifications. For paper specifications for this printer, see [Supported media weights and sizes](#).

For media ordering information, see [Supplies and accessories](#).

Multiple sheets

Table 8-1 Printer feeds multiple sheets

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
The input tray is overfilled.	Remove excess media from the input tray.
Print media is sticking together.	Remove media, flex it, rotate it 180 degrees or flip it over, and then reload it into the tray.
	 NOTE Do not fan media. Fanning can cause static electricity, which can cause media to stick together.
Media does not meet the specifications for this printer.	Use only media that meets HP media specifications for this printer. See Supported media weights and sizes .
Trays are not properly adjusted.	Make sure that the rear media-length guide indicates the length of media being used.


Stapler/stacker

Table 8-2 Resolving common stapler/stacker issues

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The stapler/stacker does not turn on.• The stapler/stacker is not stapling jobs.• The printer does not recognize the stapler/stacker.• The LED light on the stapler/stacker is off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The printer might be in sleep mode. Press any control panel button to wake the printer.• Ensure that the stapler/stacker is firmly seated on the printer.• Turn the printer off, check all cable connections, then turn the printer on.• Ensure that the stapler/stacker has been configured in the printer driver.• Print a configuration page to verify that the device is configured properly.• If the printer still fails to recognize the stapler/stacker, contact http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700.
The printer has stopped printing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• The output bin is full. Remove some or all of the media in the bin.• The stapler/stacker is configured to stop when it is out of staples. To continue printing, replace the stapler

Table 8-2 Resolving common stapler/stacker issues (continued)

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
	cartridge. For more information, see Selecting the printer behavior at staples out .
The print media jams. Repeated jams occur.	Check that you are using media that is supported for the printer. For more information, see Supported media weights and sizes .
	 NOTE Using media that is outside of HP specifications might cause problems that could require repair. This repair is not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty or service agreements.

Incorrect page size

Table 8-3 Printer feeds incorrect page size

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The correct size media is not loaded in the input tray.	Load the correct size media in the input tray.
The correct size media is not selected in the software application or printer driver.	Confirm that the settings in the application and printer driver are appropriate, since the application settings override the printer driver and control panel settings, and the printer driver settings override the control panel settings. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
The correct size media for Tray 1 is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the control panel, select the correct size media for Tray 1.
The media size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the media size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the rear and width media guides are touching the paper.

Incorrect tray

Table 8-4 Printer pulls from incorrect tray

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
You are using a driver for a different printer. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .	Use a driver for this printer.
The specified tray is empty.	Load media in the specified tray.
Tray behavior for the requested tray is set to FIRST in the SYSTEM SETUP submenu of the CONFIGURE DEVICE menu.	Change the setting to EXCLUSIVELY .

Table 8-4 Printer pulls from incorrect tray (continued)**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
The media size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the media size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Automatic feed error

Table 8-5 Media does not feed automatically**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
Manual feed is selected in the software application.	Load Tray 1 with media, or, if the media is loaded, press ✓.
The correct size media is not loaded.	Load the correct size media.
The input tray is empty.	Load media into the input tray.
Media from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any media in the paper path. Closely inspect the fuser area for jams. See Paper jams .
The media size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the media size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the rear and width media guides are touching the paper.

Tray 2 or optional tray feed error

Table 8-6 Media does not feed from Tray 2 or optional trays**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
Manual feed is selected in the software application.	Load Tray 1 with media, or, if the media is loaded, press ✓.
The correct size media is not loaded.	Load the correct size media.
The input tray is empty.	Load media in the input tray.
The correct media type for the input tray is not selected in the printer control panel.	From the printer control panel, select the correct media type for the input tray.
Media from a previous jam has not been completely removed.	Open the printer and remove any media in the paper path. Closely inspect the fuser area for jams. See Paper jams .
None of the optional trays appear as input tray options.	The optional trays only display as available if they are installed. Verify that any optional trays are correctly installed. Verify that the printer driver has been configured to recognize the optional trays. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
An optional tray is incorrectly installed.	Print a configuration page to confirm that the optional tray is installed. If not, verify that the tray is correctly attached to the printer.

Table 8-6 Media does not feed from Tray 2 or optional trays (continued)

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The media size is not configured correctly for the input tray.	Print a configuration page or use the control panel to determine the media size for which the tray is configured.
The guides in the tray are not against the paper.	Verify that the guides are touching the paper.

Special media feed error

Table 8-7 Transparencies or glossy paper will not feed

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The correct media type is not specified in the software or printer driver.	Verify that the correct media type is selected in the software or printer driver.
The input tray is overfilled.	Remove excess media from the input tray. Do not load more than 200 sheets of glossy paper or glossy film, or more than 100 transparencies in Tray 2 and optional trays. Do not exceed the maximum stack height for Tray 1.
Media in another input tray is the same size as the transparencies, and the printer is defaulting to the other tray.	Make sure that the input tray containing the transparencies or glossy paper is selected in the software application or printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers . Use the printer control panel to configure the tray to the media type loaded.
The tray containing the transparencies or glossy paper is not configured correctly for type.	Make sure that the input tray containing the transparencies or glossy paper is selected in the software application or printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers . Use the printer control panel to configure the tray to the media type loaded. See Configuring input trays .
Transparencies or glossy paper might not meet supported media specifications.	Use only media that meets the HP media specifications for this printer. See Supported media weights and sizes .

Envelope printing error

Table 8-8 Envelopes jam or will not feed in the printer

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
Envelopes are loaded in an unsupported tray. Only Tray 1 can feed envelopes.	Load envelopes into Tray 1.
Envelopes are curled or damaged.	Try using different envelopes. Store envelopes in a controlled environment.
Envelopes are sealing because the moisture content is too high.	Try using different envelopes. Store envelopes in a controlled environment.
Envelope orientation is incorrect.	Verify that the envelope is loaded correctly. See Configuring input trays .

Table 8-8 Envelopes jam or will not feed in the printer (continued)**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
This printer does not support the envelopes being used.	See Supported media weights and sizes .
Tray 1 is configured for a size other than envelopes.	Configure Tray 1 size for envelopes.

Output quality

Table 8-9 Output is curled or wrinkled**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
Media does not meet the specifications for this printer.	Use only media that meets the HP media specifications for this printer. See Supported media weights and sizes .
Media is damaged or in poor condition.	Remove media from the input tray and load media that is in good condition.
Printer is operating in an excessively humid environment.	Verify that the printing environment is within humidity specifications. See Printer specifications .
You are printing large, solid-filled areas.	Large, solid-filled areas can cause excessive curl. Try using a different pattern.
Media used was not stored correctly and might have absorbed moisture.	Remove media and replace it with media from a fresh, unopened package.
Media has poorly cut edges.	Remove media, flex it, rotate it 180 degrees or turn it over, and then reload it into the input tray. Do not fan media. If the problem persists, replace the media.
The specific media type was not configured for the tray or selected in the software.	Configure the software for the media (see the software documentation). Configure the tray for the media, see Configuring input trays .

Duplexing error

Table 8-10 Printer will not duplex or duplexes incorrectly**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
You are trying to duplex on unsupported media.	Verify that the media is supported for duplex printing. See Supported media weights and sizes .
The printer driver is not set up for duplex printing.	Set up the printer driver to enable duplex printing.
The first page is printing on the back of preprinted forms or letterhead.	Load preprinted forms and letterhead in Tray 1 with the letterhead or printed side up and the bottom of the page feeding into the printer. For Tray 2 and optional trays, load these media printed side down with the top of the page toward the back of the printer.

Printer response problems

Control panel display is blank

Table 8-11 No display message

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The printer's on/off button is in the standby position.	Verify that the printer is on. Fans might run while the printer is in standby mode (off).
The printer's memory DIMMs are defective or installed incorrectly.	Verify that the printer's memory DIMMs are correctly installed and are not defective.
The power cord is not firmly plugged into both the printer and the power receptacle.	Turn off the printer and then disconnect and reconnect the power cord. Turn the printer back on.
The line voltage is incorrect for the printer power configuration.	Connect the printer to a proper voltage source, as specified on the Power Rating Label on the back of the printer.
The power cord is damaged or excessively worn.	Replace the power cord.
The power source receptacle is not working correctly.	Connect the printer to a different power receptacle.

Printer does not print

Table 8-12 Printer is on, but nothing prints

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The printer's Ready indicator light is not lit.	Press Stop to return the printer to the Ready state.
The top cover is not closed properly.	Close the top cover firmly.
The Data indicator light is flashing.	The printer is probably still receiving data. Wait for the Data indicator to stop flashing.
REPLACE <COLOR> CARTRIDGE appears on the printer display.	Replace the print cartridge specified on the printer display.
A printer message other than Ready appears on the printer control panel.	See Control panel messages .
The output bin is full.	Remove some or all of the media in the output bin.
The stapler cartridge is empty and the printer is configured to stop printing when the cartridge is empty.	Replace the stapler cartridge.
The parallel port might have a DOS timeout error.	Add a MODE command to the AUTOEXEC.BAT file. See the DOS manual for additional information.
The PS (PostScript Emulation) personality is not selected.	Select PS or AUTO for the printer language. For more information, see Changing printer control panel configuration settings .
The correct driver is not selected in the software application or printer driver.	Select the driver for PostScript Emulation for this printer in the software application or printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .

Table 8-12 Printer is on, but nothing prints (continued)**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
The printer is not properly configured.	See Changing printer control panel configuration settings .
The computer port is not configured or is not working properly.	Run another peripheral connected to this port to verify that the port is working properly.
The printer has not been correctly named for the network or for a Macintosh computer.	Use the appropriate utility to name the printer on the network. For Macintosh OS 9.x computers, select the printer from within the Chooser. For Macintosh OS 10.2 and later, open the Print Center Application, select the connection type, and then select the printer.

Printer not receiving data

Table 8-13 Printer is on, but is not receiving data**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
The printer's Ready indicator light is not lit.	Press Stop to return the printer to the Ready state.
The top cover is not closed properly.	Close the top cover firmly.
A printer message other than Ready appears on the printer control panel.	See Control panel messages .
The interface cable is not correct for this configuration.	Select the correct interface cable for your configuration. See Parallel configuration , HP Jetdirect print servers , or USB configuration .
The interface cable is not securely connected to both the printer and the computer.	Disconnect and reconnect the interface cable. For Jetdirect network connections, verify that the Link LED is on. The Link LED indicates that a proper network connection is established.
The printer is not configured correctly.	See Changing printer control panel configuration settings for configuration information.
The interface configurations on the printer's configuration page do not match the configurations on the host computer.	Configure the printer to match the computer configuration.
The computer is not working properly.	Try using an application that you know works properly to check the computer, or, in DOS, type Dir>Pm at the DOS prompt.
The computer port that the printer is connected to is not configured or is not working properly.	Run another peripheral connected to this port to verify that the port is working properly.
The printer has not been correctly named for the network or Macintosh computer.	Use the appropriate utility to name the printer on the network. For Macintosh OS 9.x computers, select the printer from within the Chooser. For Macintosh OS 10.2 and later, open the Print Center Application, select the connection type, and select the printer.

Printer selection

Table 8-14 Unable to select the printer from the computer

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
If you are using a switch box, the printer might not be selected for the computer.	Select the correct printer through the switch box.
The printer's Ready indicator light is not lit.	Press Stop to return the printer to the Ready state.
A printer message other than Ready appears on the printer control panel.	See Control panel messages .
The correct printer driver is not installed in the computer.	Install the correct printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
The correct printer and port are not selected on the computer.	Select the correct printer and port.
The network is not configured properly for this printer.	Use the network software to verify the printer's network configuration, or consult with the network administrator.
The power source receptacle is not working correctly.	Connect the printer to a different power receptacle.

Printer control panel problems

Control panel setting

Table 8-15 Control panel settings work incorrectly

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
The printer control panel display is blank or is not lit, even when the fan is running.	Fans might run while the printer is in standby mode (off). Press the printer's on/off button to turn the printer on.
Printer settings in the printing software application or printer driver differ from the printer control panel settings.	Confirm that the settings in the application and printer driver are appropriate, since the application settings override the printer driver and control panel settings, and the printer driver settings override the control panel settings. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
Control panel settings were not correctly saved after they were changed.	Reselect the control panel settings and then press ✓. An asterisk (*) should appear to the right of the setting.
The Data indicator light is lit, and there are no pages printing.	Buffered data exists in the printer. Press ✓ to print the buffered data using current control panel settings and activate the new control panel settings.
If the printer is on a network, another user might have changed printer control panel settings.	Consult the network administrator to coordinate changes to printer control panel settings.

Selecting optional trays

Table 8-16 Unable to select optional trays

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
The optional trays do not appear as an option on the configuration page or on the control panel.	The optional trays are displayed as available only if they are installed. Verify that the trays are correctly installed.
The optional trays do not appear as available in the printer driver.	Verify that the printer driver configuration recognizes the optional tray. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .

Incorrect printer output

Incorrect fonts

Table 8-17 Incorrect fonts are printed

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The font has not been correctly selected in the software application.	Re-select the font in the software application.
The font is not available to the printer.	Download the font to the printer or use another font. (In Windows, the driver does this automatically.)
The correct printer driver is not selected.	Select the correct printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .

Symbol sets

Table 8-18 Unable to print all characters in a symbol set

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The correct font is not selected.	Select the correct font.
The correct symbol set is not selected.	Select the correct symbol set.
The selected character or symbol is not supported by the software application.	Use a font that supports the selected character or symbol.

Drifting text

Table 8-19 Drifting text between printouts

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
Your software application is not resetting the printer to the top of the page.	See the documentation for the software or the PCL/PJL Technical Reference Package for specific information.

Output errors

Table 8-20 Erratic, missing characters or interrupted printout

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The interface cable is of poor quality.	Try using a different, higher-quality, IEEE-compliant cable. Parallel cables can be no longer than 10 meters (30 feet).

Table 8-20 Erratic, missing characters or interrupted printout (continued)**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
The interface cable is loose.	Disconnect and reconnect the interface cable.
The interface cable is damaged or bad.	Try using a different interface cable.
The power cable is loose.	Disconnect and reconnect the power cable.
You are attempting to print a PCL job with the printer configured for PostScript Emulation.	From the printer control panel, select the correct printer personality, and then resend the print job.
You are attempting to print a PostScript job with the printer configured for PCL.	From the printer control panel, select the correct printer personality, and then resend the print job.

Partial printout

Table 8-21 Partial printout**Cause and solution**

Cause	Solution
A memory error message appears on the printer control panel.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Free up printer memory by deleting unneeded downloaded fonts, style sheets, and macros from printer memory; or Add more memory to the printer.
The file you are printing contains errors.	<p>Check the software application verify that the file does not contain errors. To do so:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Print another file that you know is error-free from within the same application; or Print the file from another application.

Guidelines for printing with different fonts

- The 80 internal fonts are available in PostScript Emulation (PS) and PCL mode.
- To conserve printer memory, download only those fonts that are needed.
- If you require several downloaded fonts, consider installing additional printer memory.

Some software applications automatically download fonts at the beginning of each print job. It might be possible to configure those applications to download only soft fonts that are not already resident in the printer.

Software application problems

System selection through software

Table 8-22 Unable to change system selections through software

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
System software changes are locked out by the printer control panel.	Consult with your network administrator.
The software application does not support system changes.	See the software application documentation.
The correct printer driver is not loaded.	Load the correct printer driver. For more information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
The correct application driver is not loaded.	Load the correct application driver.

Font selection from software

Table 8-23 Unable to select a font from the software

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The font is not available to the software application.	See the software application documentation.

Color selection from software

Table 8-24 Unable to select colors from the software

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The software application does not support color.	See the documentation for the software application.
Color mode is not selected in the software application or printer driver.	Select Color mode instead of grayscale or monochrome mode.
The correct printer driver is not loaded.	Load the correct printer driver.

Optional trays and duplexer recognition

Table 8-25 Printer driver does not recognize the optional trays or the duplexer

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The printer driver has not been configured to recognize the optional trays or the duplexer.	See the printer driver's online Help for instructions on how to configure the driver to recognize printer accessories. For more

Table 8-25 Printer driver does not recognize the optional trays or the duplexer (continued)

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
	information, see Printer drivers or Printer drivers for Macintosh computers .
The accessory might not be installed.	Verify that the accessory is properly installed.

Troubleshooting common Macintosh problems

This section lists problems that can occur when using Mac OS 9.x or Mac OS X.

Solving problems with Mac OS 9.x



NOTE Setup for USB and IP printing is performed through the Desktop Printer Utility. The printer will *not* appear in the Chooser.

Table 8-26 Problems with Mac OS 9.x

The printer name or IP address does not appear in the Desktop Printer Utility.

Cause	Solution
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the Ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The wrong connection type might be selected.	Make sure that Printer (USB) or Printer (LPR) is selected in the Desktop Printer Utility, depending on the type of connection that exists between the printer and the computer.
The wrong printer name or IP address is being used.	In order to check the printer name or IP address, print a configuration page. Verify that the printer name or IP address on the configuration page matches the printer name or IP address in the Desktop Printer Utility.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

The PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for the printer does not appear as a selection in the Desktop Printer Utility.

Cause	Solution
The printer software might not have been installed or was installed incorrectly.	Make sure that the LaserJet 4700 PPD is in the following hard-drive folder: <code>System Folder/Extensions/Printer Descriptions</code> . If necessary, reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.
The PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file is corrupt.	Delete the PPD file from the following hard drive folder: <code>System Folder/Extensions/Printer Descriptions</code> . Reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.

A print job was not sent to the printer that you wanted.

Cause	Solution
The print queue might be stopped.	Restart the print queue. Select the desktop printer icon, open the Printing menu in the top menu bar, and then click Start Print Queue .
The wrong printer name or IP address is being used. Another printer that has the same or a similar name or IP address might have received your print job.	Print a configuration page in order to check the printer name or IP address. Verify that the printer name or IP address on the configuration page matches the printer name or IP address in the Desktop Printer Utility.
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the Ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or

Table 8-26 Problems with Mac OS 9.x (continued)

A print job was not sent to the printer that you wanted.

Cause	Solution
	Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

You cannot use the computer while the printer is printing.

Cause	Solution
Background Printing has not been selected.	For LaserWriter 8.6 and later: Turn on background printing by selecting Print Desktop on the File menu and then clicking Background Printing in the pop-up menu.

An encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file does not print with the correct fonts.

Cause	Solution
This problem occurs with some programs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Send the file in ASCII format instead of binary encoding.• Try downloading the fonts that are contained in the EPS file to the printer before printing.

Your document is not printing with New York, Geneva, or Monaco fonts.



Cause	Solution
The printer might be substituting fonts.	Click Options in the Page Setup dialog box to clear substituted fonts.

You are unable to print from a third-party USB card.

Cause	Solution
This error occurs when the software for USB printers is not installed.	When adding a third-party USB card, you might need the Apple USB Adapter Card Support software. The most current version of this software is available from the Apple Web site.

Table 8-26 Problems with Mac OS 9.x (continued)

When connected with a USB cable, the printer does not appear in the Desktop Printer Utility or the Apple System Profiler after the driver is selected.

Cause	Solution
This problem is caused by either a software or hardware component.	Software troubleshooting <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that your Macintosh supports USB.• Verify that your Macintosh operating system is Mac OS 9.1 or 9.2.• Ensure that your Macintosh has the appropriate USB software from Apple. <div> NOTE The iMac and Blue G3 desktop Macintosh systems meet all of the requirements to connect to a USB device.</div> Hardware troubleshooting <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that the printer is turned on.• Verify that the USB cable is connected correctly.• Check that you are using the appropriate high-speed USB cable.• Ensure that you do not have too many USB devices drawing power from the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer.• Check to see if more than two nonpowered USB hubs are connected in a row on the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer. <div> NOTE The iMac keyboard is a nonpowered USB hub.</div>

Solving problems with Mac OS X

Table 8-27 Problems with Mac OS X

The printer driver is not listed in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

Cause	Solution
The printer software might not have been installed or was installed incorrectly.	Make sure that the printer PPD is in the following hard-drive folder: <code>Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/<lang>.lproj</code> , where <code><lang></code> is the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. If necessary, reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.
The Postscript Printer Description (PPD) file is corrupt.	Delete the PPD file from the following hard-drive folder: <code>Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/<lang>.lproj</code> , where <code><lang></code> is the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. Reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.

Table 8-27 Problems with Mac OS X (continued)

The printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name does not appear in the printer list in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

Cause	Solution
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The wrong connection type might be selected.	Make sure that USB, IP Printing, or Rendezvous is selected, depending on the type of connection that exists between the printer and the computer.
The wrong printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name is being used.	Print a configuration page in order to check the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name. Verify that the name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name on the configuration page matches the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

The printer driver does not automatically set up your selected printer in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

Cause	Solution
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The printer software might not have been installed or was installed incorrectly.	Make sure that the printer PPD is in the following hard-drive folder: <code>Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/<lang>.lproj</code> , where <code><lang></code> is the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. If necessary, reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.
The Postscript Printer Description (PPD) file is corrupt.	Delete the PPD file from the following hard-drive folder: <code>Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources/<lang>.lproj</code> , where <code><lang></code> is the two-letter language code for the language that you are using. Reinstall the software. See the getting started guide for instructions.
The printer might not be ready.	Make sure that the cables are connected correctly, the printer is on, and the ready light is on. If you are connecting through a USB or Ethernet hub, try connecting directly to the computer or use a different port.
The interface cable might be defective or of poor quality.	Replace the interface cable. Make sure to use a high-quality cable.

A print job was not sent to the printer that you wanted.

Cause	Solution
The print queue might be stopped.	Restart the print queue. Open print monitor and select Start Jobs .
The wrong printer name or IP address is being used. Another printer with the same or similar name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name might have received your print job.	Print a configuration page in order to check the printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name. Verify that the name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name on the configuration page matches the

Table 8-27 Problems with Mac OS X (continued)

A print job was not sent to the printer that you wanted.

Cause	Solution
	printer name, IP address, or Rendezvous host name in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

An encapsulated PostScript (EPS) file does not print with the correct fonts.

Cause	Solution
This problem occurs with some programs.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Try downloading the fonts that are contained in the EPS file to the printer before printing.Send the file in ASCII format instead of binary encoding.

You are unable to print from a third-party USB card.

Cause	Solution
This error occurs when the software for USB printers is not installed.	When adding a third-party USB card, you might need the Apple USB Adapter Card Support software. The most current version of this software is available from the Apple Web site.

When connected with a USB cable, the printer does not appear in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility after the driver is selected.

Cause	Solution
This problem is caused by either a software or a hardware component.	<p>Software troubleshooting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check that your Macintosh supports USB.Verify that your Macintosh operating system is Mac OS X v10.1, v10.2.8, or v10.3.Ensure that your Macintosh has the appropriate USB software from Apple. <p>Hardware troubleshooting</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check that the printer is turned on.Verify that the USB cable is connected correctly.Check that you are using the appropriate high-speed USB cable.Ensure that you do not have too many USB devices drawing power from the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain, and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer.Check to see if more than two nonpowered USB hubs are connected in a row on the chain. Disconnect all of the devices from the chain and connect the cable directly to the USB port on the host computer.

Table 8-27 Problems with Mac OS X (continued)

When connected with a USB cable, the printer does not appear in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility after the driver is selected.

Cause	Solution
	<div><div></div><div>NOTE The iMac keyboard is a nonpowered USB hub.</div></div>

Color printing problems


Printout color error

Table 8-28 Printing black instead of color

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
Color mode is not selected in the software application or printer driver.	Select Color mode instead of grayscale or monochrome mode in the software application or printer driver, see Printer information pages to learn how to print a configuration page.
The correct printer driver is not selected in your software application.	Select the correct printer driver.
No color appears on the configuration page.	Consult your service representative.
The control-panel setting for COLOR SUPPLY OUT is set to AUTOCONTINUE BLACK , and one of the color print cartridges is out. The printer continues to print in black only.	Replace the color print cartridge.
The control-panel setting for RESTRICT COLOR USE is set to DISABLE COLOR , or it is set to COLOR IF ALLOWED and you do not have permission to print in color.	Change the control-panel setting to ENABLE COLOR .

Incorrect shade

Table 8-29 Incorrect shade

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
The media does not meet the specifications for this printer.	For information on media specifications, see Supported media weights and sizes
You are operating the printer in excessively humid conditions.	Verify that the printer's environment is within humidity specifications. See Environmental specifications .
<div> NOTE For more information about color quality problems, see Print quality troubleshooting.</div>	

Missing color

Table 8-30 Missing color

Cause and solution	
Cause	Solution
Defective HP print cartridge.	Replace the cartridge.
A non-HP cartridge might be installed.	Ensure that you are using a genuine HP print cartridge.

Cartridge error

Table 8-31 Inconsistent colors after installing a print cartridge

Cause and solution


Cause	Solution
Another print cartridge might be low.	Check the supplies gauge on the control panel or print a supplies status page. See Printer information pages .
Print cartridges might be improperly installed.	Verify that each print cartridge is installed properly.
A non-HP cartridge might be installed.	Ensure that you are using a genuine HP print cartridge.

Color match error

Table 8-32 Printed colors do not match screen colors

Cause and solution

Cause	Solution
Extremely light screen colors are not being printed.	The software application might interpret extremely light colors as white. If so, avoid using extremely light colors.
Extremely dark screen colors are being printed in black.	The software application might interpret extremely dark colors as black. If so, avoid using extremely dark colors.
The colors on the computer screen differ from the printer output.	On the printer driver's Color Control tab, there are several options that affect color matching between the screen and the printed page, such as Color Themes and Color Options . For more information, see Color matching .



NOTE Several factors can influence your ability to match printed colors to those on your screen. These factors include print media, overhead lighting, software applications, operating system palettes, monitors, and video cards and drivers.

Print quality troubleshooting

When occasional print quality problems occur, use the information in this section to help solve the problem.

Print quality problems associated with media

Some print quality problems arise from use of inappropriate media.

- Use paper that meets HP paper specifications. See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).
- The surface of the media is too smooth. Use media that meets HP paper specifications. See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).
- The print driver setting might be incorrect. Be sure that you have selected the correct driver setting for the paper that you are using.
- The print mode might be set incorrectly, or the paper might not meet recommended specifications. For more information, see [Supported media weights and sizes](#).
- The transparencies you are using are not designed for proper toner adhesion. Use only transparencies designed for HP Color LaserJet printers.
- The moisture content of the paper is uneven, too high, or too low. Use paper from a different source or from an unopened ream of paper.
- Some areas of the paper reject toner. Use paper from a different source or from an unopened ream of paper.
- The letterhead you are using is printed on rough paper. Use a smoother, xerographic paper. If this solves your problem, consult with the printer of your letterhead to verify that the paper used meets the specifications for this printer. See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).
- The paper is excessively rough. Use a smoother, xerographic paper.

Overhead transparency defects

Overhead transparencies might display any of the image quality problems that any other type of media could display, as well as defects specific to transparencies. In addition, because transparencies are pliable while in the print path, they are subject to being marked by the media-handling components.



NOTE Allow transparencies to cool at least 30 seconds before handling them.

- On the printer driver's **Paper** tab, select **Transparency** as the media type. Also, make sure that the tray is correctly configured for transparencies.
- Check that the transparencies meet the specifications for this printer. See [Supported media weights and sizes](#).

For ordering information, see [Part numbers](#).

- Handle transparencies by the edges. Skin oil on the surface of transparencies can cause spots and smudges.
- Small, random dark areas on the trailing edge of solid fill pages might be caused by transparencies sticking together in the output bin. Try printing the job in smaller batches.

- The selected colors are undesirable when printed. Select different colors in the software application or printer driver.
- If you are using a reflective overhead projector, use a standard overhead projector instead.

Print quality problems associated with the environment

The printer is operating in excessively humid or dry conditions. Verify that the printing environment is within specifications. See [Environmental specifications](#).

Print quality problems associated with jams

- Make sure that all media is cleared from the paper path. See [Paper jam recovery](#).
- The printer recently jammed. Print two to three pages to clean the printer.
- The media does not pass through the fuser causing image defects to appear on subsequent documents. Print two to three pages to clean the printer. However, if the problem persists see the next section.

Print quality troubleshooting pages

The print quality troubleshooting pages provide information on aspects of the printer that affect print quality.

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **DIAGNOSTICS**.
3. Press **✓** to select **DIAGNOSTICS**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PQ TROUBLESHOOTING**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PQ TROUBLESHOOTING**.

The message **Printing... PQ troubleshooting** appears on the display until the printer finishes printing the print quality troubleshooting information. The printer returns to the **Ready** state after printing the print quality troubleshooting information.

The print quality troubleshooting information includes one page for each color (black, magenta, cyan, and yellow), printer statistics related to print quality, instructions on interpreting the information, and procedures to solve print quality problems.

If following the procedures recommended by the print quality troubleshooting pages do not improve print quality, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.

Print quality troubleshooting tool

The print quality troubleshooting tool helps you identify and troubleshoot print quality issues for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer. The tool includes solutions for many print quality issues, using standard images to provide a common diagnostic environment. It is designed to provide intuitive, step-by-step directions for printing troubleshooting pages that are used to isolate print quality problems and provide possible solutions.

To find the print quality troubleshooting tool, go to the following URL: <http://www.hp.com/go/printquality/clj4700>.

Calibrating the printer

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer automatically calibrates and cleans at various times to maintain the highest level of print quality. The user might also request the printer to calibrate via the printer's control panel, using **QUICK CALIBRATE NOW** or **FULL CALIBRATE NOW** located in the **CALIBRATION** and **PRINT QUALITY** menu. **QUICK CALIBRATE NOW** is used for color tone calibration and takes about 65 seconds. If color density or tone seems wrong, Quick Calibration can be run. Full Calibration includes the Quick Calibrate routines and adds Drum Phase Calibration and Color Plane Registration (CPR). This takes about 4 minutes and 20 seconds. If color layers (black, magenta, cyan, and yellow) on the printed page seem to be shifted from one another, **FULL CALIBRATE NOW** should be run.

The HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer incorporates a new feature to skip calibration when appropriate, thereby making the printer available more quickly. For example, if the printer is powered off and on quickly (within 20 seconds), calibration is not needed and will be skipped. In this case, the printer will reach the **Ready** state approximately one minute sooner.

While the printer is calibrating and cleaning, the printer will pause printing for the amount of time it takes to complete the calibration or cleaning. For most calibrations and cleaning, the printer will not interrupt a print job, but will wait for the job to complete before calibrating or cleaning.

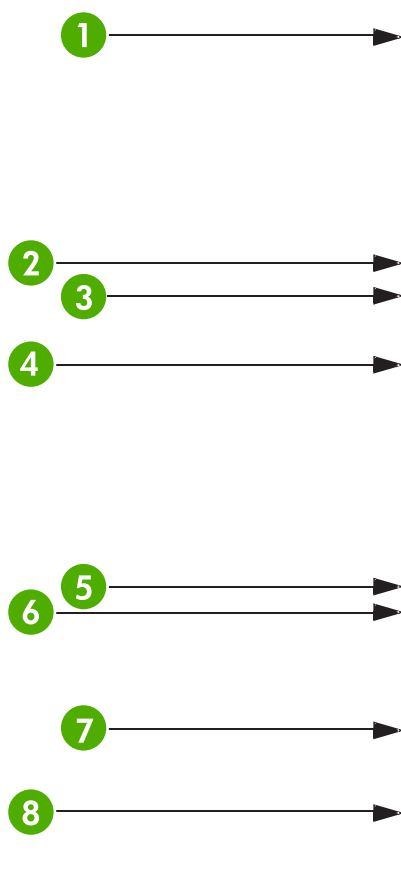
1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press **▼** to highlight **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
3. Press **✓** to select **CONFIGURE DEVICE**.
4. Press **▼** to highlight **PRINT QUALITY**.
5. Press **✓** to select **PRINT QUALITY**.
6. Press **▼** to highlight **QUICK CALIBRATE NOW**.
7. Press **✓** to select **QUICK CALIBRATE NOW**.

OR

To perform a full calibration, use **FULL CALIBRATE NOW** instead of **QUICK CALIBRATE NOW** in steps 6 and 7.

Repetitive defect ruler

If defects repeat at regular intervals on the page, use this ruler to identify the cause of the defect. Place the top of the ruler at the first defect. The marking that is beside the next occurrence of the defect indicates which component needs to be replaced.



1	First occurrence of the defect (the distance from the top of the page to the defect might vary).
2	Print cartridge (34.3 mm (1.35 inches))
3	Print cartridge or transfer roller (if the defect occurs in only one color, the defective part is the print cartridge; if the defect occurs in all colors, the defective part is the ETB) (37.7 mm (1.48 inches))
4	Print cartridge (42.7 mm (1.68 inches))
5	ETB (75 mm (2.95 inches))
6	Fuser (76.0 mm (2.99 inches))
7	Fuser (81.0 mm (3.19 inches))
8	Print cartridge (94.2 mm (3.71 inches))

To confirm that a print cartridge is the problem, insert a print cartridge from another HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer, if one is available, before ordering a new print cartridge.

If the defect repeats at 94.0 mm (3.75 inch) intervals, try replacing the print cartridge before replacing the fuser.

Print quality defect chart

Use the examples in the print quality defect chart to determine which print-quality problem you are experiencing, and then see the corresponding pages to find information that can help you troubleshoot

the problem. For the latest information and problem-solving procedures, go to <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700>.



NOTE The print-quality defect chart assumes the use of letter- or A4-size media that has moved through the printer short-edge first (portrait orientation).

An image with no defects



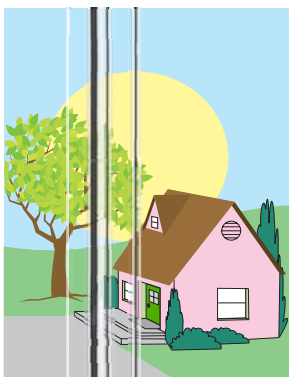
Horizontal lines or streaks

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



Misaligned colors

- Calibrate the printer.



Vertical lines

- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



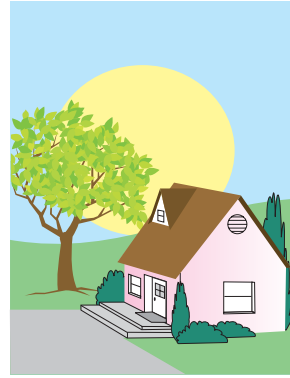
Repetitive defects

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



Color fade in all colors

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Calibrate the printer.



Color fade in one color

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Calibrate the printer.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



Fingerprints and media dents

- Make sure to use supported media.
- Make sure that the media you are using does not have any wrinkles or dents from handling, and that the media is not contaminated with visible fingerprints or other foreign substances.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



Loose toner

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Make sure to use supported media.
- Make sure that the media type and size for the tray are set correctly in the control panel for the media that you are using.
- Make sure that the media is loaded correctly and that the size guides are touching the edges of the stack of media.

Make sure that the media you are using does not have any wrinkles or dents from handling, and that the media is not contaminated with visible fingerprints or other foreign substances.



Smeared toner

- Make sure to use supported media.



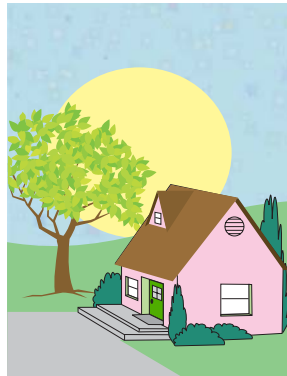
White areas (dropouts) on page

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Make sure to use supported media.
- Make sure that the media you are using does not have any wrinkles or dents from handling, and that the media is not contaminated with visible fingerprints or other foreign substances.
- Make sure that the media type and size for the tray are set correctly in the control panel for the media that you are using.
- Calibrate the printer.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.



Media damage (wrinkles, curl, creases, tears)

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Make sure to use supported media.
- Make sure that the media is loaded correctly.
- Make sure that the media type and size for the tray are set correctly in the control panel for the media that you are using.
- Make sure that the media you are using does not have any



Specks or stray toner

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
- Make sure to use supported media.
- Make sure that the media type and size for the tray are set correctly in the control panel for the media that you are using.
- Calibrate the printer.
- Print the Print Quality Troubleshooting Pages (see [Print quality troubleshooting](#)) and follow the diagnostic procedure listed on the

wrinkles or dents from handling, and that the media is not contaminated with visible fingerprints or other foreign substances.

first page to help isolate the defect to a particular component.

- Make sure that the following supplies are seated correctly:
 - fuser
 - transfer belt
- Inspect the jam areas and remove any undetected jammed or torn media.



Skewed, stretched, or off-center page

- Make sure that the operation and location requirements of the printer are met.
 - Make sure to use supported media.
 - Make sure that the media is loaded correctly.
 - For problems with page skew, turn over the stack of media and rotate the stack 180 degrees.
 - Make sure that the following supplies are seated correctly:
 - fuser
 - transfer belt
 - Inspect the jam areas and remove any undetected jammed or torn media.
-

A Working with memory and print server cards

Printer memory and fonts

The printer has two 200-pin DDR SDRAM slots. One slot is available for adding memory to the printer. DDR SDRAM memory is available in 128 and 256 MB modules.



NOTE Memory specification: HP Color LaserJet 4700 series printers use 200-pin small outline dual inline memory modules (SODIMM) that support 128 or 256 MB of RAM.

The printer also has three flash memory card slots for printer firmware, fonts, and other solutions.

- The first flash memory card is reserved for printer firmware.



NOTE Use the first flash memory card slot for firmware only. The slot is marked "Firmware Slot".

- The two additional flash memory card slots enable the user to add fonts and third-party solutions, such as signatures and personalities. The slots are marked "Slot 2" and "Slot 3". For more information about types of solutions available, go to <http://www.hp.com/go/gsc>.



NOTE Flash memory cards adhere to Compact Flash specifications and size.



CAUTION Do not insert a flash memory card that is designed for use with a digital camera into the printer. The printer does not support photo printing directly from a flash memory card. If you install a camera-type flash memory card, the control panel displays a message asking if you want to reformat the flash memory card. If you choose to reformat the card, all data on the card will be lost.

You might want to add more memory to the printer if you often print complex graphics or PS documents, or use many downloaded fonts. Additional memory also allows the printer to print multiple, collated copies at the maximum speed.



NOTE Single inline memory modules (SIMMs) / dual in-line memory modules (DIMMs) used on previous HP LaserJet printers are not compatible with this printer.

NOTE To order SODIMMs, see [Supplies and accessories](#).

Before ordering additional memory, see how much memory is currently installed by printing a configuration page.

Printing a configuration page

1. Press **Menu** to enter the **MENUS**.
2. Press ▼ to highlight **INFORMATION**.
3. Press ✓ to select **INFORMATION**.
4. Press ▼ to highlight **PRINT CONFIGURATION**.
5. Press ✓ to print the configuration page.

Installing a hard disk, memory, and fonts

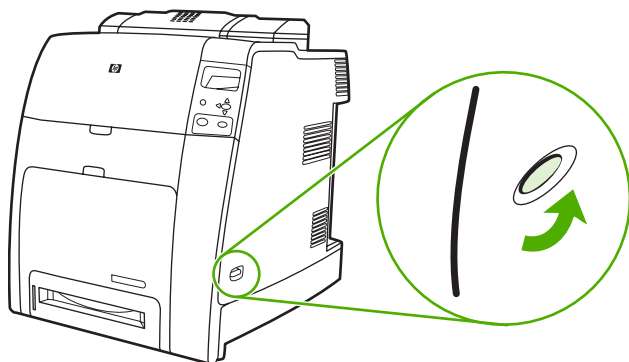
You can install more memory for the printer, and you can also install a font card to allow the printer to print characters for languages such as Chinese or the Cyrillic alphabet.



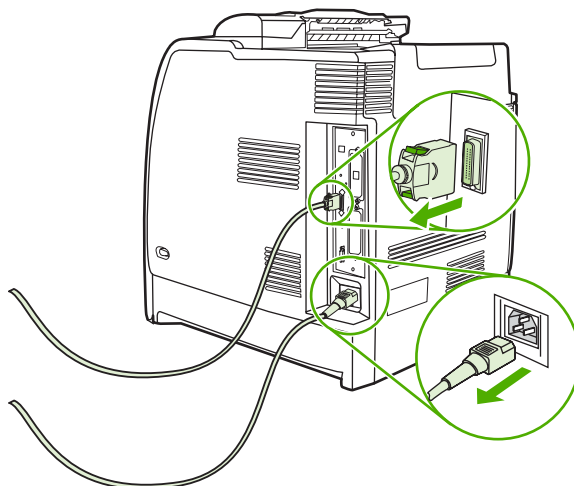
CAUTION Static electricity can damage DIMMs. When handling DIMMs, either wear an antistatic wrist strap, or frequently touch the surface of the DIMM antistatic package and then touch bare metal on the printer.

Installing a hard drive

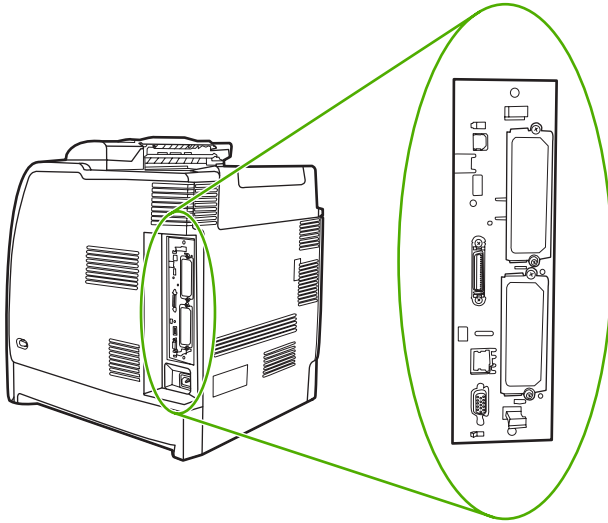
1. Turn the printer off.



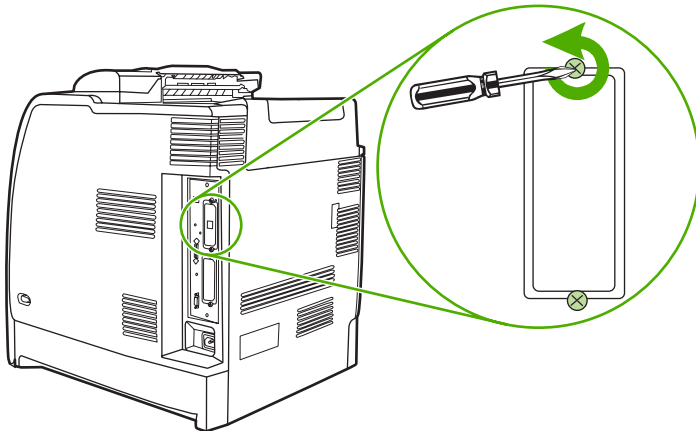
2. Disconnect all power and interface cables.



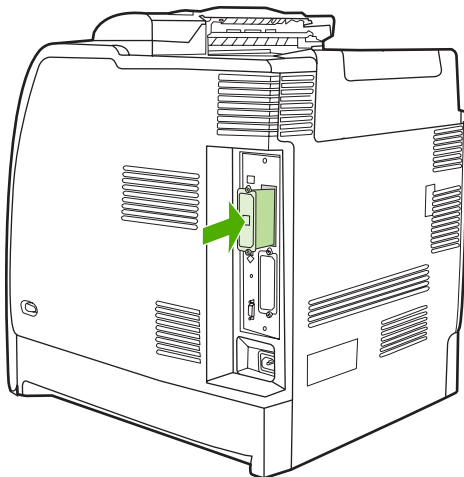
3. Locate the formatter board in the rear of the printer.



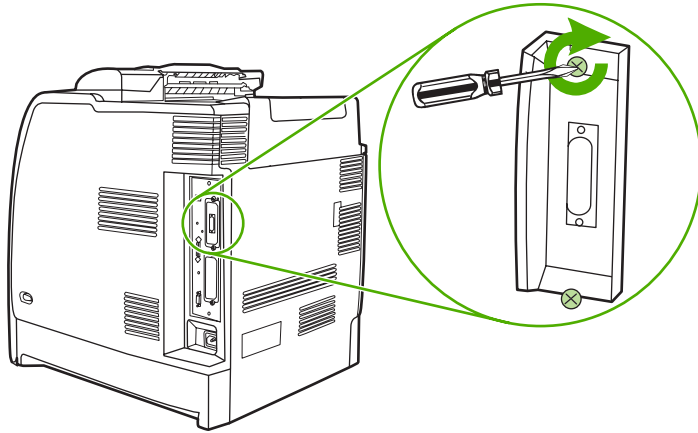
4. Locate an open EIO slot. Loosen and remove the two retaining screws holding the cover for the EIO slot, and then remove the cover. You will not need these screws and the cover again. They can be discarded.



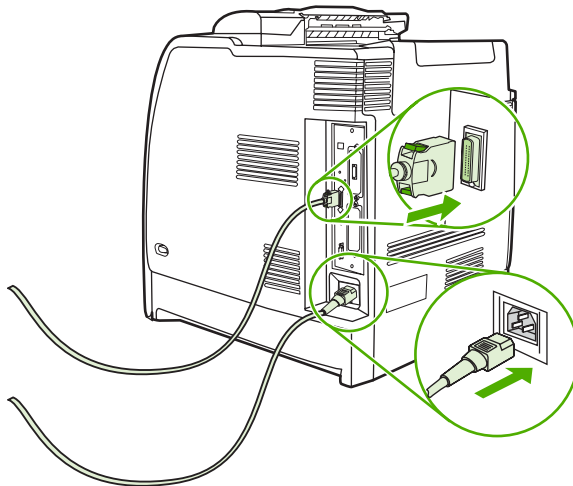
5. Firmly insert the hard disk into the EIO slot.



6. Insert and tighten the retaining screws that came with the hard disk.

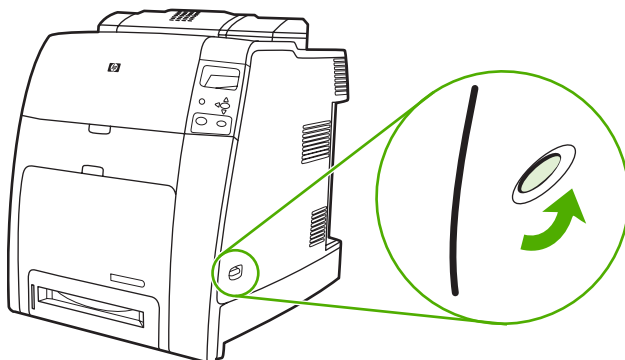


7. Connect the cables and power cord, and turn the printer on.

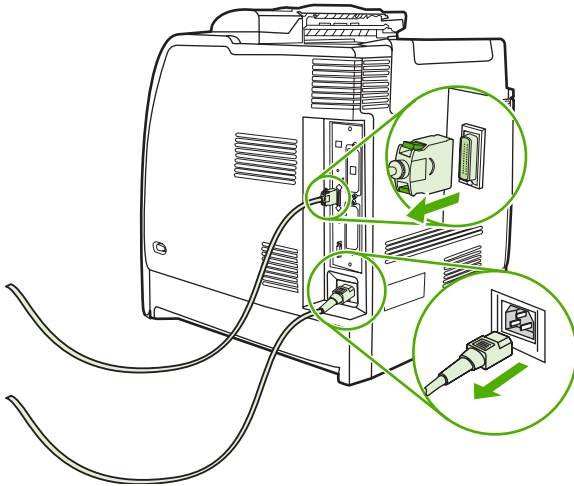


Installing DDR memory DIMMs

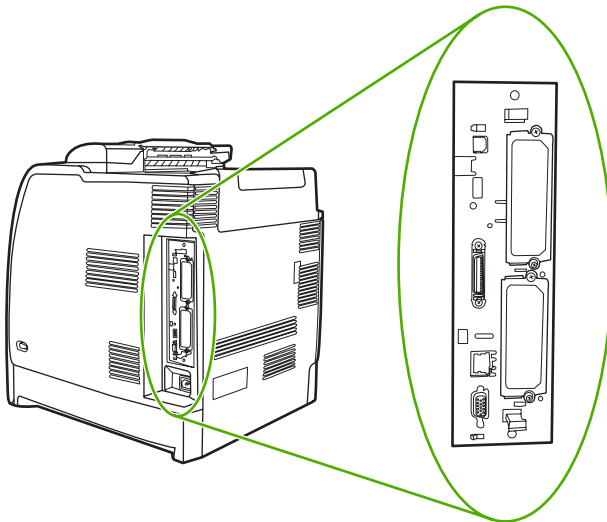
1. Turn the printer off.



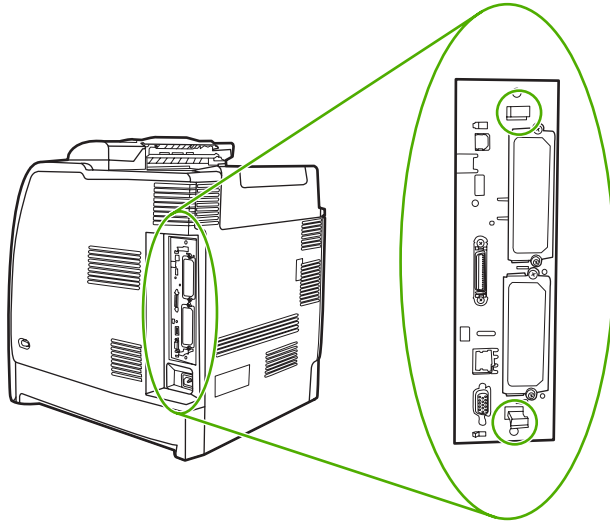
2. Disconnect all power and interface cables.



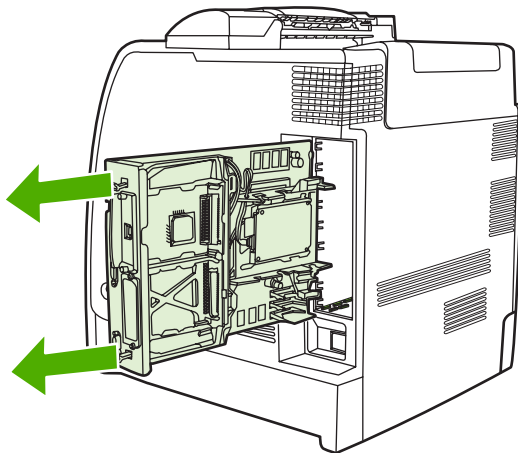
3. Locate the formatter board in the rear of the printer.



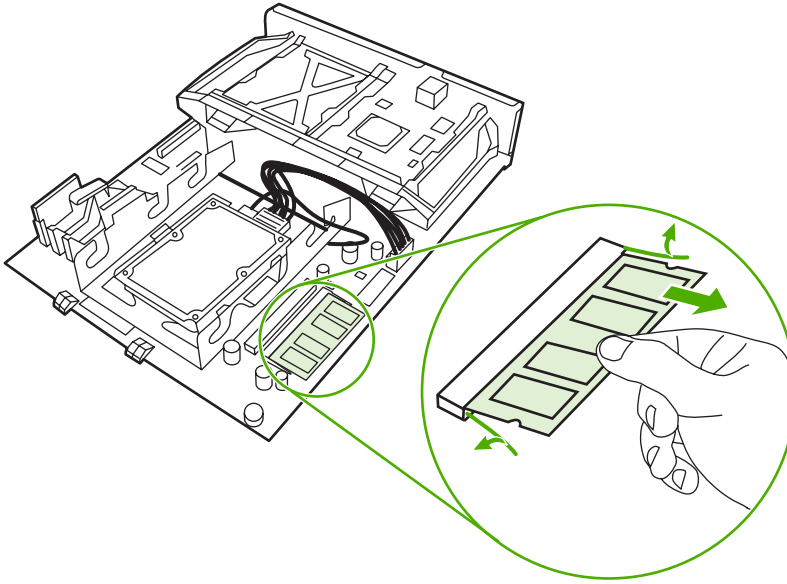
4. Grasp the black tabs situated near the top and bottom of the formatter board.



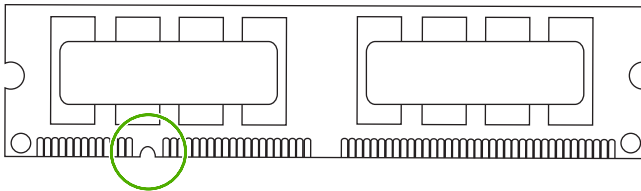
5. Gently pull on the black tabs to pull the formatter board from the printer. Place the formatter board on a clean, flat, grounded surface.



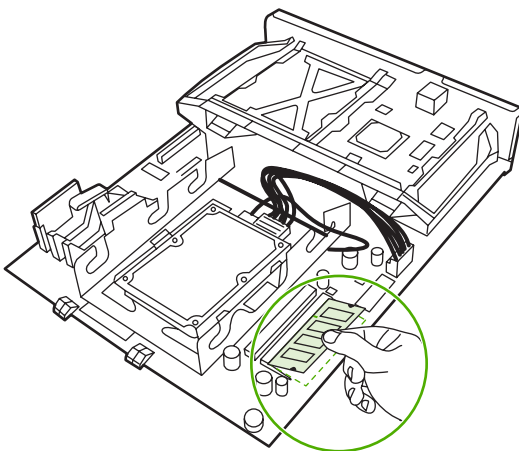
6. To replace a DDR DIMM that is currently installed, spread the latches apart on each side of the DIMM slot, lift the DDR DIMM up at an angle, and pull it out.



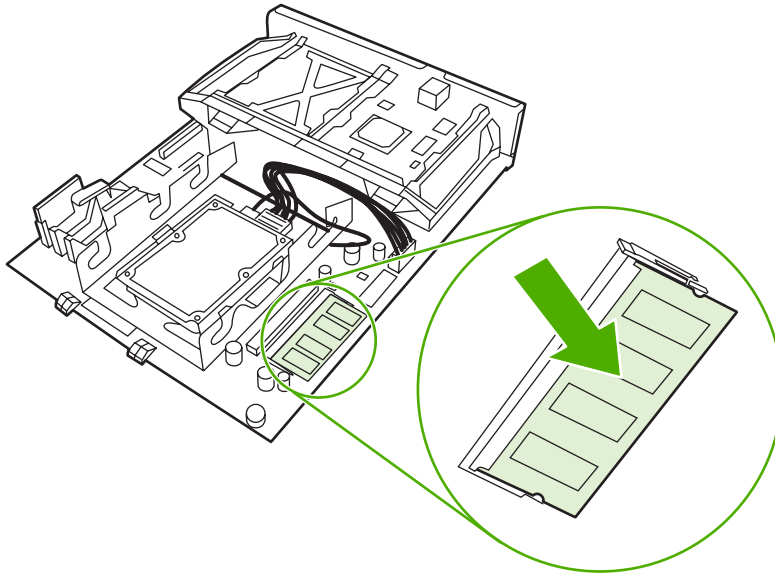
7. Remove the new DIMM from the antistatic package. Locate the alignment notch on the bottom edge of the DIMM.



8. Holding the DIMM by the edges, align the notch on the DIMM with the bar in the DIMM slot at an angle and firmly press the DIMM into the slot until it is fully seated. When installed correctly, the metal contacts are not visible.

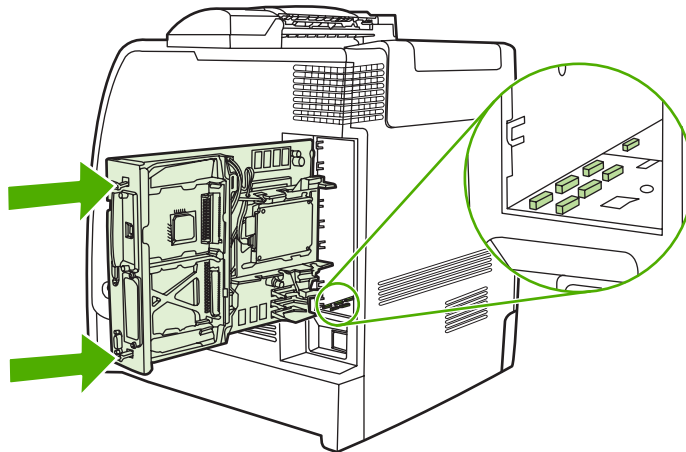


9. Push down on the DIMM until both latches engage the DIMM.

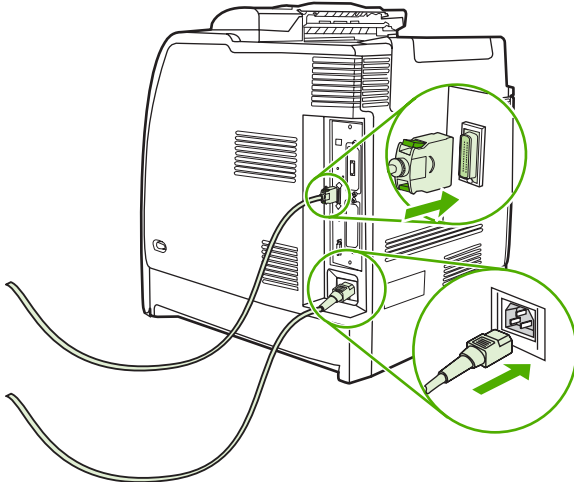


NOTE If you have difficulty inserting the DIMM, make sure the notch on the bottom of the DIMM is aligned with the bar in the slot. If the DIMM still does not go in, make sure you are using the correct type of DIMM.

10. Align the formatter board in the tracks at the top and bottom of the slot, and then slide the board back into the printer.



11. Reconnect the power cable and interface cables, and turn the printer on.



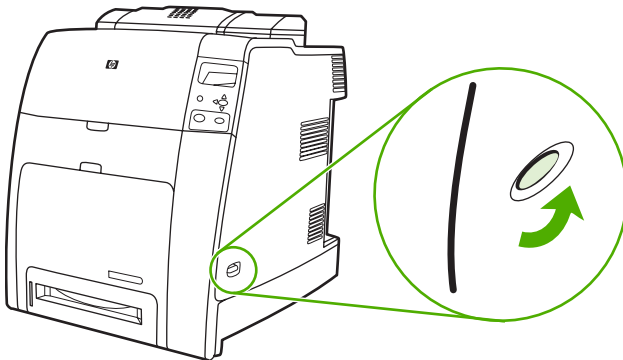
12. If you installed a memory DIMM, go to [Enabling memory](#).

Installing a flash memory card

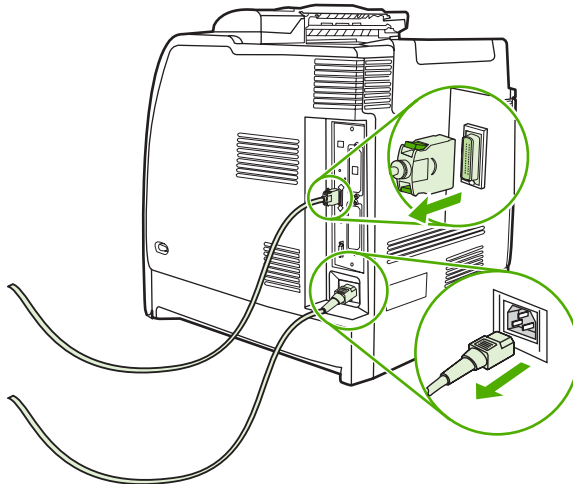


CAUTION Do not insert a flash memory card that is designed for use with a digital camera into the printer. The printer does not support photo printing directly from a flash memory card. If you install a camera-type flash memory card, the control panel displays a message asking if you want to reformat the flash memory card. If you choose to reformat the card, all data on the card will be lost.

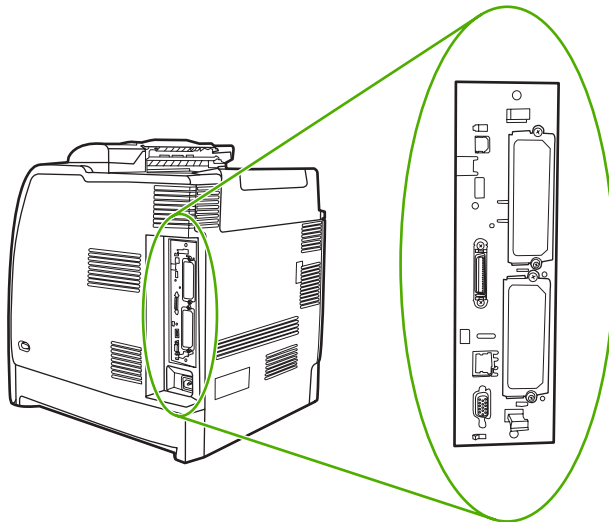
1. Turn the printer off.



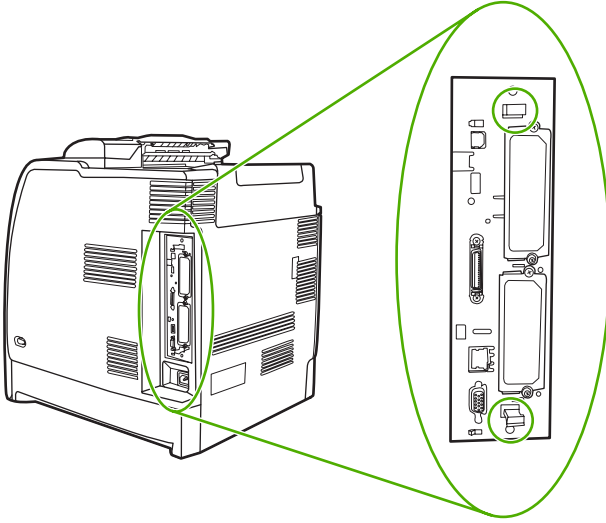
2. Disconnect all power and interface cables.



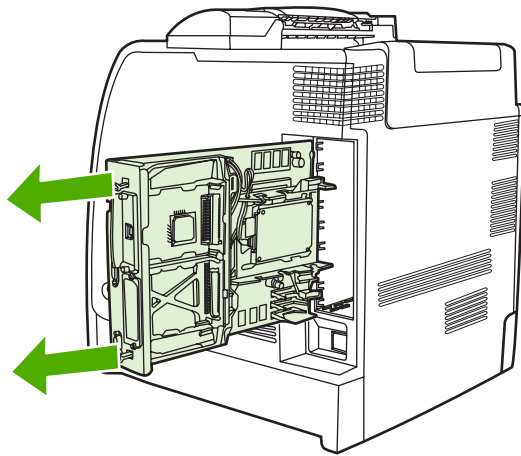
3. Locate the formatter board in the rear of the printer.



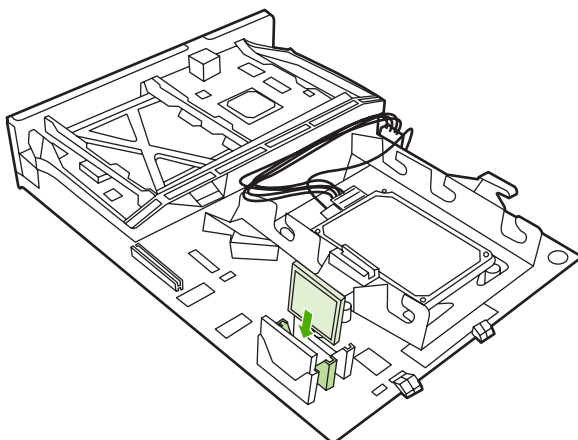
4. Grasp the black tabs situated near the top and bottom of the formatter board.



5. Gently pull on the black tabs to pull the formatter board from the printer. Place the formatter board on a clean, flat, grounded surface.



6. Align the groove on the side of the flash memory card with the notches in the connector and push it in the slot until it is fully seated.

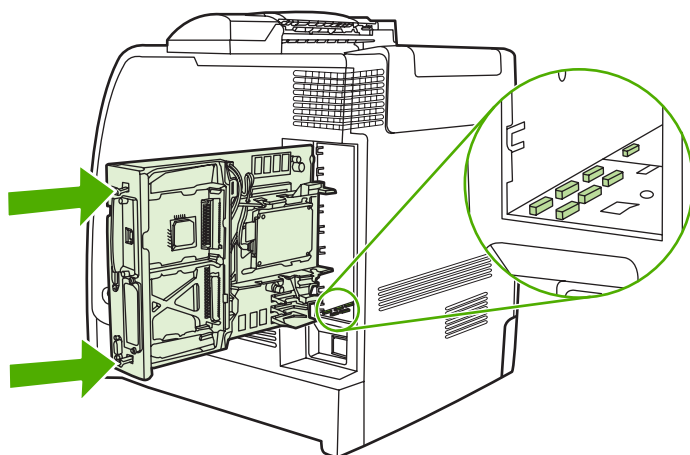


CAUTION Do not insert the flash memory card at an angle.

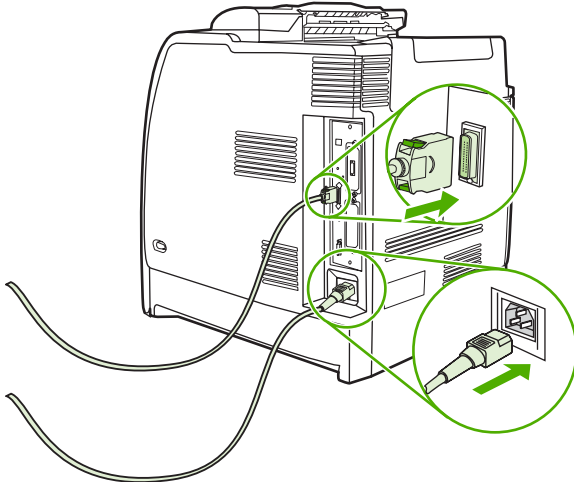


NOTE The first flash memory slot marked "Firmware Slot" is reserved for firmware only. Slots 2 and 3 should be used for all other solutions.

7. Align the formatter board in the tracks at the top and bottom of the slot, and then slide the board back into the printer.



8. Reconnect the power cable and interface cables, and turn the printer on.



Enabling memory

If you installed a memory DIMM, set the printer driver to recognize the newly added memory.

To enable memory for Windows 98 and Me

1. On the **Start** menu, point to **Settings**, and click **Printers**.
2. Right-click the printer and select **Properties**.
3. On the **Configure** tab, click **More**.
4. In the **Total Memory** field, type or select the total amount of memory that is now installed.
5. Click **OK**.

To enable memory for Windows 2000 and XP

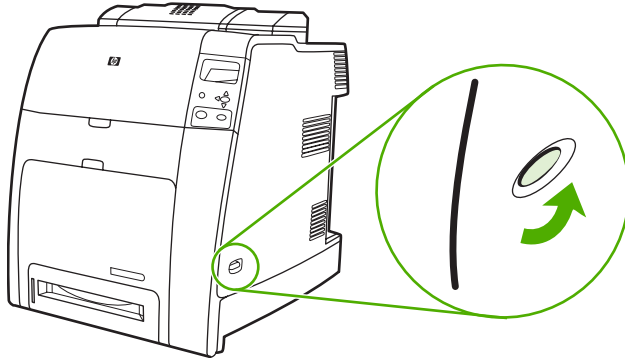
1. On the **Start** menu, point to **Settings**, and click **Printers** or **Printers and Faxes**.
2. Right-click the printer and select **Properties**.
3. On the **Device Settings** tab, click **Printer Memory** (in the **Installable Options** section).
4. Select the total amount of memory that is now installed.
5. Click **OK**.

Installing an HP Jetdirect print server card

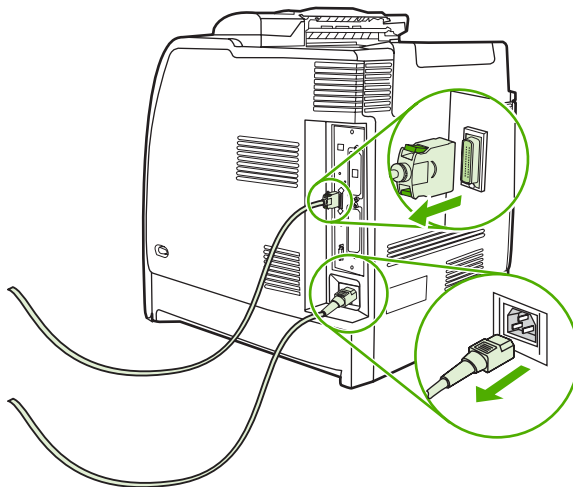
You can install an HP Jetdirect print server in an open EIO slot.

To install an HP Jetdirect print server card

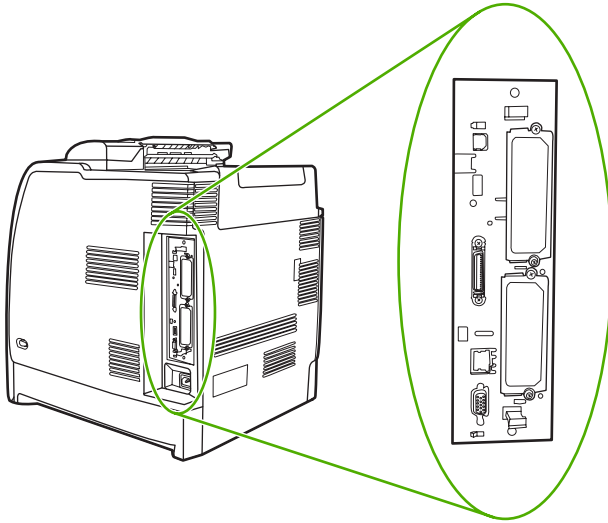
1. Turn the printer off.



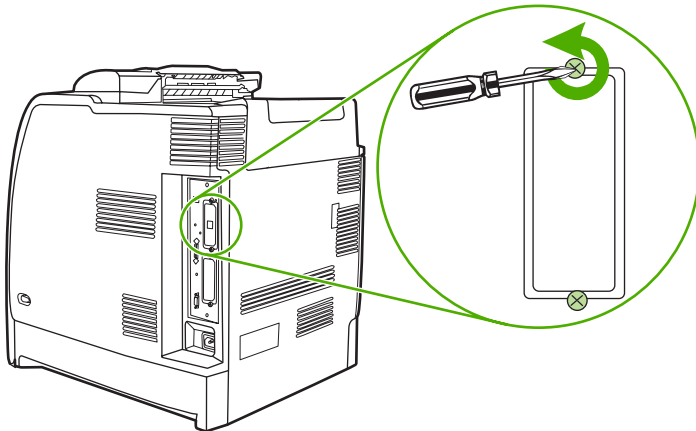
2. Disconnect all power and interface cables.



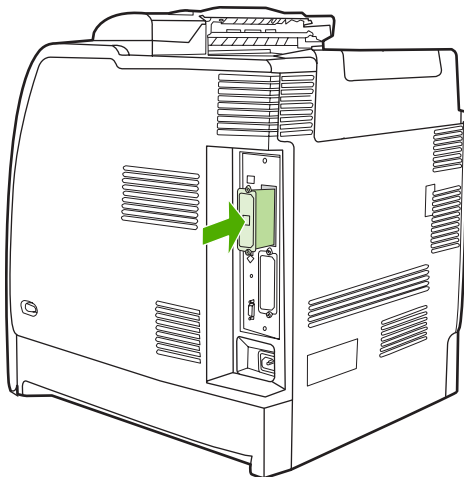
3. Locate the formatter board in the rear of the printer.



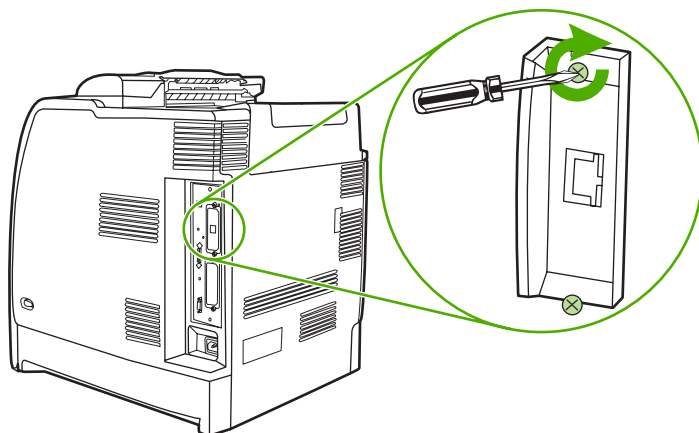
4. Locate an open EIO slot. Loosen and remove the two retaining screws holding the cover for the EIO slot, and then remove the cover. You will not need these screws and the cover again. They can be discarded.



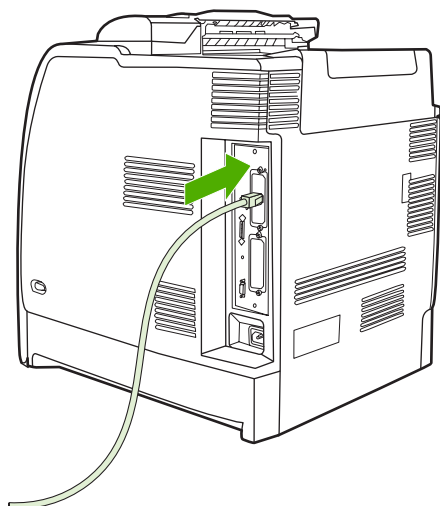
5. Firmly insert the HP Jetdirect print server card into the EIO slot.



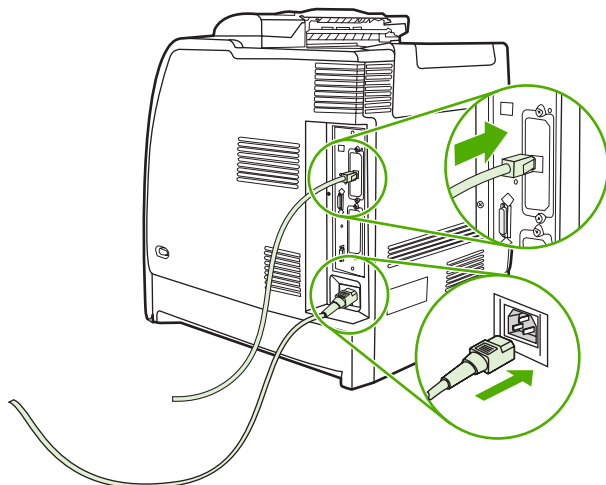
6. Insert and tighten the retaining screws that came with the print server card.



7. Connect the network cable.



8. Reconnect the power cable, and turn the printer on.



9. Print a configuration page (see [Configuration page](#)). In addition to a printer configuration page and a Supplies Status page, an HP Jetdirect configuration page that contains network configuration and status information should also print.

If the printer does not print, uninstall and reinstall the print server card to ensure that it is completely seated in the slot.

10. Perform one of these steps:
 - Choose the correct port. See the computer or operating system documentation for instructions.
 - Run the printer installation software again, choosing the network installation this time.

B Supplies and accessories

To order supplies in the US, contact <http://www.hp.com/go/ljsupplies>. To order supplies worldwide, see <http://www.hp.com/ghp/buyonline.html>. To order accessories, see <http://www.hp.com/go/accessories>.

Ordering directly through the embedded Web server (for printers with network connections)

Use the following steps to order printing supplies directly through the embedded Web server (see [Using the embedded Web server.](#))

1. In the Web browser on the computer, enter the IP address for the printer. The printer status window appears. Or, go to the URL provided in the alert e-mail.
2. Click **Other Links**.
3. Click **Order Supplies**. The browser opens to a page in which you can choose to send information about the printer to HP. You also have the option to order supplies without sending the printer's information to HP.
4. Select the part numbers you want to order and follow the instructions on the screen.

Part numbers

To order supplies through the embedded Web server, select the part numbers you want to order and follow the instructions on the screen.

Supplies, accessories, and part numbers

Part	Part number	Type/size
Memory	J6073A	EIO printer hard disk
	Q7721A	DIMM 128-MB DDR 200-pin SDRAM
	Q7722A	DIMM 256-MB DDR 200-pin SDRAM
	Q7723A	DIMM 512-MB DDR 200-pin SDRAM
Accessories	J7934A	HP Jetdirect 620n fast Ethernet print server
	J7960A	HP Jetdirect 625n Gigabit Ethernet print server
	J7951A	HP Jetdirect ew2400 wired/wireless print server (external)
	Q7501A	Printer stand
	Q7499A	Optional 500-sheet paper feeder (Tray 3, 4, 5, or 6)
	Q7003A	Stapler/stacker
		 NOTE A stapler/stacker can be added to models that are equipped with an external duplexer.
Printer supplies	C8091A	Stapler cartridge refill (5,000 staples)
	Q5950A	Black print cartridge
	Q5951A	Cyan print cartridge
	Q5952A	Yellow print cartridge
	Q5953A	Magenta print cartridge
	Q7504A	Image transfer (ETB) kit
	Q7502A	Image fuser kit (110 volt)
	Q7503A	Image fuser kit (220 volt)
Cables	C2946A	IEEE 1284-C compliant parallel cable, 3 meters (approximately 10 feet) long, with 25-pin male/micro 36-pin male (C size) connector
	C2947A	10-meter parallel cable
	C6518A	HP USB 2.0 printer cable a-b, 2 meter (6 feet)

Part	Part number	Type/size
Media	Q6541A	HP Color Laser Soft Gloss Presentation Paper (letter), 200 sheets
	Q6542A	HP Professional 120 Soft Gloss Laser Paper (A4), 200 sheets
	Q1298A	HP LaserJet Tough Paper (letter)
	Q1298B	HP Superior 165 Satin Matt Laser Paper (A4)
	HPU1132	HP Premium Choice LaserJet Paper (letter)
	CHP410	HP Premium Choice LaserJet Paper (A4)
	HPJ1124	HP LaserJet Paper (letter)
	CHP310	HP LaserJet Paper (A4)
	Q2413A	HP Premium Cover Paper (letter), 100 sheets
	Q6545A	HP Laser Gloss Photo/Image Paper (letter)
	Q6547A	HP Professional 120 Glossy Laser Paper (A4)
	Q6607A	HP Color Laser Glossy Photo Paper (letter), 200 sheets
	Q6614A	HP Photo 220 Glossy Laser Paper (A4), 100 sheets
	Q6610A	HP Color Laser Brochure Paper (letter), 250 sheets
	Q6616A	HP Superior 160 Glossy Laser Paper (A4), 150 sheets
	C2934A	HP Color Laser Transparencies (letter), 50 sheets
	C2936A	HP Color Laser Transparencies (A4), 50 sheets
Reference materials	Q7491-90953	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 User Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7491-90943	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Getting Started Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7499-90901	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 500-sheet Input Tray Install Guide</i>

Part	Part number	Type/size
		For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7501-90902	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Printer Stand Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7504-90902	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 ETB Kit Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7502-90902	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 110V/220V Fuser Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7003-90903	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Stapler/Stacker Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7491-90951	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Formatter Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	5851-2562	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Paper Feeder Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7491-90941	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Help Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7491-90009	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Roller Kit Install Guide</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .
	Q7491-90949	<i>HP Color LaserJet 4700 Roadmap</i> For downloadable versions, go to http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700 . When connected, select Manuals .

C Service and Support

Hewlett-Packard limited warranty statement

HP PRODUCT

HP Color LaserJet 4700, 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn, and 4700ph+ printer

DURATION OF LIMITED WARRANTY

One-year limited warranty

HP warrants to you, the end-user customer, that HP hardware and accessories will be free from defects in materials and workmanship after the date of purchase, for the period specified above. If HP receives notice of such defects during the warranty period, HP will, at its option, either repair or replace products which prove to be defective. Replacement products may be either new or equivalent in performance to new.

HP warrants to you that HP software will not fail to execute its programming instructions after the date of purchase, for the period specified above, due to defects in material and workmanship when properly installed and used. If HP receives notice of such defects during the warranty period, HP will replace software which does not execute its programming instructions due to such defects.

HP does not warrant that the operation of HP products will be uninterrupted or error free. If HP is unable, within a reasonable time, to repair or replace any product to a condition as warranted, you will be entitled to a refund of the purchase price upon prompt return of the product.

HP products may contain remanufactured parts equivalent to new in performance or may have been subject to incidental use.

Warranty does not apply to defects resulting from (a) improper or inadequate maintenance or calibration, (b) software, interfacing, parts or supplies not supplied by HP, (c) unauthorized modification or misuse, (d) operation outside of the published environmental specifications for the product, or (e) improper site preparation or maintenance.

HP's limited warranty is valid in any country/region or locality where HP has a support presence for this product and where HP has marketed this product. The level of warranty service you receive may vary according to local standards. HP will not alter form, fit or function of the product to make it operate in a country/region for which it was never intended to function for legal or regulatory reasons. TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE ABOVE WARRANTIES ARE EXCLUSIVE AND NO OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION, WHETHER WRITTEN OR ORAL, IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED AND HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some countries/regions, states or provinces do not allow limitations on the duration of an implied warranty, so the above limitation or exclusion might not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you might also have other rights that vary from country/region to country/region, state to state, or province to province.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE REMEDIES IN THIS WARRANTY STATEMENT ARE YOUR SOLE AND EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES. EXCEPT AS INDICATED ABOVE, IN NO EVENT WILL HP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR LOSS OF DATA OR FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT OR DATA), OR OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE. Some countries/regions, states or provinces do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

THE WARRANTY TERMS CONTAINED IN THIS STATEMENT, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT LAWFULLY PERMITTED, DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY AND ARE IN ADDITION TO THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE SALE OF THIS PRODUCT TO YOU.

Print cartridge limited warranty statement

This HP Print Cartridge is warranted to be free from defects in materials and workmanship.

This warranty does not apply to print cartridges that (a) have been refilled, refurbished, remanufactured or tampered with in any way, (b) experience problems resulting from misuse, improper storage, or operation outside of the published environmental specifications for the printer product or (c) exhibit wear from ordinary use.

To obtain warranty service, please return the product to place of purchase (with a written description of the problem and print samples) or contact HP customer support. At HP's option, HP will either replace products that prove to be defective or refund your purchase price.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE ABOVE WARRANTY IS EXCLUSIVE AND NO OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION, WHETHER WRITTEN OR ORAL, IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED AND HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL HP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT OR DATA), OR OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE.

THE WARRANTY TERMS CONTAINED IN THIS STATEMENT, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT LAWFULLY PERMITTED, DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY AND ARE IN ADDITION TO THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE SALE OF THIS PRODUCT TO YOU.

Fuser and transfer unit limited warranty statement

This HP product is warranted to be free from defects in materials and workmanship until the printer provides a low-life indicator on the control panel.

This warranty does not apply to products that (a) have been refurbished, remanufactured or tampered with in any way, (b) experience problems resulting from misuse, improper storage, or operation outside of the published environmental specifications for the printer product or (c) exhibit wear from ordinary use.

To obtain warranty service, please return the product to place of purchase (with a written description of the problem) or contact HP customer support. At HP's option, HP will either replace products that prove to be defective or refund your purchase price.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, THE ABOVE WARRANTY IS EXCLUSIVE AND NO OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION, WHETHER WRITTEN OR ORAL, IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED AND HP SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

TO THE EXTENT ALLOWED BY LOCAL LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL HP OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL (INCLUDING LOST PROFIT OR DATA), OR OTHER DAMAGE, WHETHER BASED IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE.

THE WARRANTY TERMS CONTAINED IN THIS STATEMENT, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT LAWFULLY PERMITTED, DO NOT EXCLUDE, RESTRICT OR MODIFY AND ARE IN ADDITION TO THE MANDATORY STATUTORY RIGHTS APPLICABLE TO THE SALE OF THIS PRODUCT TO YOU.

HP maintenance agreements

HP has several types of maintenance agreements that meet a wide range of support needs. Maintenance agreements are not part of the standard warranty. Support services may vary by area. Check with your local HP dealer to determine the services available to you.

On-site service agreements

To provide you with the level of support best suited to your needs, HP has on-site service agreements with three response times:

Priority on-site service

This agreement provides 4-hour service response to your site for calls made during normal HP business hours.

Next-day on-site service

This agreement provides support by the next working day following a service request. Extended coverage hours and extended travel beyond HP's designated service zones are available on most on-site agreements (for additional charges).

Weekly (volume) on-site service

This agreement provides scheduled weekly on-site visits for organizations with many HP products. This agreement is designated for sites using 25 or more workstation products, including printers, plotters, computers, and disk drives.

D Printer specifications

Physical dimensions

Table D-1 Physical dimensions

Product	Height	Depth	Width	Weight
HP Color LaserJet 4700 and HP Color LaserJet 4700n	582 mm (22.9 in.)	598 mm (23.5 in.)	521 mm (20.5 in.)	47.7 kg (105.1 lb.)
HP Color LaserJet 4700dn with duplexer	628.6 mm (24.7 in.)	598 mm (23.5 in.)	521 mm (20.5 in.)	48.9 kg (107.8 lb.)
HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn with Trays 3 and 4, duplexer, and stand	1010.6 mm (39.8 in.)	715 mm (28.2 in.)	630 mm (24.8 in.)	104.3 kg (230 lb.)
HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+ with Trays 3, 4, 5, and 6, duplexer, stapler/stacker, and stand	1375.5 mm (54.2 in.)	715 mm (28.2 in.)	630 mm (24.8 in.)	130.5 kg (287.7 lb.)
750 sheet stapler/stacker	305 mm (12 in.)	476 mm (18.7 in.)	500 mm (19.7 in.)	8.4 kg (18.5 lb.)
Optional paper tray	117 mm (4.6 in.)	578 mm (22.8 in.)	514 mm (20.25 in.)	8.9 kg (19.6 lb.)
Printer stand	148 mm (5.8 in.)	715 mm (28.2 in.)	630 mm (24.8 in.)	37.6 kg (83 lb.)

Electrical specifications

	110-Volt models	220-Volt models
Power requirements	100-127V (+/- 10%) 50/60 Hz (+/- 2 Hz)	220-240V (+/- 10%) 50/60 Hz (+/- 2 Hz)
Rated current	8 Amps	4 Amps

Table D-2 Power consumption (average, in watts)¹

Power consumption (average, in watts)				
Product model	Printing (31 ppm letter) ²	Ready ^{3, 4}	Sleep ⁵	Off
HP Color LaserJet 4700	567	55	17	0.3
HP Color LaserJet 4700n	567	55	17	0.3
HP Color LaserJet 4700dn	567	55	17	0.3
HP Color LaserJet 4700dtn	591	63	18	0.3
HP Color LaserJet 4700ph+	623	66	18	0.3



NOTE ¹Values are subject to change. See <http://www.hp.cpm/support/clj4700> for current information.

²Power reported is the highest value measured using all standard voltages.

³Maximum heat dissipation for all models in **Ready** mode is 225 BTU/hour.

⁴Default time from **Ready** mode to **Sleep** mode is 30 minutes.

⁵Recovery time from **Sleep** mode to start of printing is less than 15 seconds.

Acoustic emissions

Sound Power Level	Declared Per ISO 9296
Printing (31 ppm letter) ^{1, 2, 3}	$L_{WAd}=6.7$ Bels (A) [67 dB (A)]
Ready	$L_{WAd}=4.7$ Bels (A) [47 dB (A)]
Sound Pressure Level - Bystander Position	Declared Per ISO 9296
Printing (31 ppm letter) ^{1, 2, 3}	$L_{pAm}=50$ dB (A)
Ready	$L_{pAm}=31$ dB (A)



NOTE ¹Values are subject to change. See <http://www.hp.com/support/clj4700> for current information.

²Configuration tested: Base printer, simplex printing on A4 paper.

³HP Color LaserJet 4700 speed: 31 ppm letter and 30 ppm A4 paper.

Environmental specifications

Specification	Recommended	Allowed
Temperature	17 to 25°C (62.6 to 77°F)	15 to 30°C (59 to 86°F)
Humidity	30 to 70% relative humidity (RH)	10 to 80% RH
Altitude	N/A	0 to 2600 m (0 to 8530 ft)

E Regulatory information

FCC regulations

FCC regulations

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy. If this equipment is not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase separation between equipment and receiver.
- Connect equipment to an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is located.
- Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician.



NOTE Any changes or modifications to the printer that are not expressly approved by HP could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Use of a shielded interface cable is required to comply with the Class B limits of Part 15 of FCC rules. Hewlett-Packard shall not be liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, consequential, or other damage alleged in connection with the furnishing or use of this information.

Environmental product stewardship program

Protecting the environment

Hewlett-Packard Company is committed to providing quality products in an environmentally sound manner. This product has been designed with several attributes to minimize impacts on our environment.

Ozone production

This product generates no appreciable ozone gas (O₃).

Power consumption

Power usage drops significantly while in Sleep mode, which saves natural resources and saves money without affecting the high performance of this printer. This product qualifies for ENERGY STAR® (Version 3.0), which is a voluntary program to encourage the development of energy-efficient office products.



ENERGY STAR® is a U.S. registered service mark of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. As an ENERGY STAR® partner, Hewlett-Packard Company has determined that this product meets ENERGY STAR® Guidelines for energy efficiency. For more information, see <http://www.energystar.gov/>.

Paper use

This product's optional, automatic, duplex feature (two-sided printing, see [Two-sided \(duplex\) printing](#)) and N-up printing (multiple pages printed on one page) capability can reduce paper usage and the resulting demands on natural resources.

Plastics

Plastic parts over 25 grams have markings according to international standards that enhance the ability to identify plastics for recycling purposes at the end of the product's life.

HP LaserJet printing supplies

In many countries/regions, this product's printing supplies (print cartridges, fuser, and transfer unit) can be returned to HP through the HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program. An easy-to-use and free takeback program is available in over 30 countries/regions. Multilingual program information and instructions are included in every new HP LaserJet print cartridge and supplies package.

HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program Information

Since 1992, the HP Printing Supplies Returns and Recycling Program has collected millions of used LaserJet print cartridges that otherwise might have been discarded in the world's landfills. The HP LaserJet print cartridges and supplies are collected and bulk-shipped to our resource and recovery

partners, who disassemble the cartridges. After a thorough quality inspection, selected parts are reclaimed for use in new cartridges. Remaining materials are separated and converted into raw materials for use by other industries to make a variety of useful products.

- **U.S. returns**—For a more environmentally responsible return of used cartridges and supplies, HP encourages the use of bulk returns. Simply bundle two or more cartridges together and use the single, pre-paid, and pre-addressed UPS label that is supplied in the package. For more information in the U.S., call 1-800-340-2445 or visit the HP LaserJet Supplies Web site at <http://www.hp.com/go/recycle>.
- **Non-U.S. recycling returns**—Non-U.S. customers should visit the <http://www.hp.com/go/recycle> Web site for further information regarding availability of the HP Supplies Returns and Recycling Program.

Recycled paper

This product is capable of using recycled papers according to EN 12281:2002. HP recommends the use of recycled papers that contain not more than 5% ground wood, such as HP Office Recycled paper.

Material restrictions

This HP product contains a battery that may require special handling at end-of-life. The battery contained in this product includes:

- Type: Carbon monofluoride lithium battery
- Weight: 0.8 grams
- Location: Formatter board
- User removable: No



廢電池請回收

This product does not contain added mercury.

For recycling information, contact <http://www.hp.com/go/recycle>, contact your local authorities, or go to the Electronics Industries Alliance Web site at <http://www.eiae.org>.

Disposal of waste equipment by users in private households in the European Union

This symbol on the product or on its packaging indicates that this product must not be disposed of with your other household waste. Instead, it is your responsibility to dispose of your waste equipment by handing it over to a designated collection point for the recycling of waste electrical and electronic equipment. The separate collection and recycling of your waste equipment at the time of disposal will help to conserve natural resources and ensure that it is recycled in a manner that protects human health and the environment. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, your household waste disposal service or the shop where you purchased the product.



Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS)

Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) can be obtained by contacting the HP LaserJet Supplies Web site at <http://www.hp.com/hpinfo/community/environment/productinfo/safety.htm>.

For more information

On HP's environmental programs, including:

- Product environmental profile sheet for this and many related HP products
- HP's commitment to the environment
- HP's environmental management system
- HP's end-of-life product return and recycling program
- Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS)

See <http://www.hp.com/go/environment> or <http://www.hp.com/hpinfo/community/environment>.

Declaration of Conformity

Declaration of Conformity

according to ISO/IEC Guide 22 and EN 45014

Manufacturer's Name: Hewlett-Packard Company
Manufacturer's Address: 11311 Chinden Boulevard,
Boise, Idaho 83714-1021, USA

declares, that the product

Product Name: HP Color LaserJet 4700, 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn, 4700ph+
Product numbers: Q7491A, Q7492A, Q7493A, Q7494A, Q7495A
including accessories: Q7499A, Q7033A, Q7505A

Regulatory Model Number⁴: BOISB-0404-00
Product Options: All

Toner Cartridge: Q5950A, Q5951A, Q5952A, Q5953A

conforms to the following Product Specifications:

Safety: IEC 60950-1:2001 / EN60950-1:2001
IEC 60825-1:1993 + A1 + A2 / EN 60825-1:1994 + A11 + A2 (Class 1 Laser/LED Product)
GB4943-2001

EMC: CISPR 22:1997 / EN 55022:1998 Class B^{1, 3}
EN 61000-3-2:2000
EN 61000-3-3:1995 + A1:2001
EN 55024:1998+A1 amendment
FCC Title 47 CFR, Part 15 Class B / ICES-003, Issue 4
GB9254-1998

Supplementary Information:

The product herewith complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC, the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC, the R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC (Annex II) and carries the CE-Marking accordingly.

¹The product was tested in a typical configuration with Hewlett-Packard Personal Computer Systems.

²This Device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two Conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

³Except clause 9.5 which is not yet in effect.

⁴For regulatory purposes, this product is assigned a Regulatory model number. This number should not be confused with the product name or the product number(s).

Boise, Idaho 83714-1021, USA

05 January, 2005

For regulatory topics only:

Australia Contact: Product Regulations Manager, Hewlett-Packard Australia, Ltd., 31-41 Joseph Street, Blackburn, Victoria 3130, Australia

European Contact: Your Local Hewlett-Packard Sales and Service Office or Hewlett-Packard GmbH, Department HQ-TRE/Standards Europe, Herrenberger Straße 140, D-71034 Böblingen, Germany, (FAX: +49-7031-14-3143)

USA Contact: Product Relations Manager, Hewlett-Packard Company, PO Box 15, Mail Stop 160, Boise, Idaho 83707-0015, USA, (Phone: 208-396-6000)

Safety statements

Laser safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration has implemented regulations for laser products manufactured since August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States. The printer is certified as a "Class 1" laser product under the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. Since radiation emitted inside the printer is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape during any phase of normal user operation.



WARNING! Using controls, making adjustments, or performing procedures other than those specified in this user guide could result in exposure to hazardous radiation.

Canadian DOC regulations

Complies with Canadian EMC Class B requirements.

« Conforme à la classe B des normes canadiennes de compatibilité électromagnétiques « CEM ». »

EMI statement (Korea)

B급 기기 (가정용 정보통신기기)

이 기기는 가정용으로 전자파적합등록을 한 기기로서
주거지역에서는 물론 모든지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

VCCI statement (Japan)

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境でを使用することを目的としていますが、この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。

AC cordset statement (Japan)

製品には、同梱された電源コードをお使い下さい。
同梱された電源コードは、他の製品では使用出来ません。

Laser Statement for Finland

Luokan 1 laserlaite

Klass 1 Laser Apparat

HP Color LaserJet 4700, 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn, 4700ph+ laserkirjoitin on käyttäjän kannalta turvallinen luokan 1 laserlaite. Normaalisissa käytössä kirjoittimen suojakotelointi estää lasersäteen pääsyn laitteen ulkopuolelle. Laitteen turvallisuusluokka on määritetty standardin EN 60825-1 (1994) mukaisesti.

VAROITUS!

Laitteen käyttäminen muulla kuin käyttöohjeessa mainitulla tavalla saattaa altistaa käyttäjän turvallisuusluokan 1 ylittävälle näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle.

VARNING!

Om apparaten används på annat sätt än i bruksanvisning specificerats, kan användaren utsättas för osynlig laserstrålning, som överskrider gränsen för laserklass 1.

HUOLTO

HP Color LaserJet 4700, 4700n, 4700dn, 4700dtn, 4700ph+ -kirjoittimen sisällä ei ole käyttäjän huollettavissa olevia kohteita. Laitteen saa avata ja huoltaa ainoastaan sen huoltamiseen koulutettu henkilö. Tällaiseksi huoltotoimenpiteeksi ei katsota väriainekasetin vaihtamista, paperiradan puhdistusta tai muita käyttäjän käsikirjassa lueteltuja, käyttäjän tehtäväksi tarkoitettuja ylläpitotoimia, jotka voidaan suorittaa ilman erikoistyökaluja.

VARO!

Mikäli kirjoittimen suojakotelo avataan, olet alttiina näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle laitteen ollessa toiminnassa. Älä katso säteeseen.

VARNING!

Om laserprinterns skyddshölje öppnas då apparaten är i funktion, utsättas användaren för osynlig laserstrålning. Betrakta ej strålen. Tiedot laitteessa käytettävän laserdiodin säteilyominaisuuksista: Aallonpituus 775-795 nm

Teho 5 m W

Luokan 3B laser

Glossary

bidirectional communication Two-way data transmission.

bin A receptacle for holding printed pages.

BOOTP Abbreviation for "Bootstrap Protocol," an Internet protocol that allows a networked computer or peripheral to automatically obtain its IP configuration from a BOOTP server.

chooser A Macintosh accessory that allows you to select a device.

CMYK An acronym for colors "cyan, magenta, yellow, and black."

control panel The area on the printer that contains buttons and a display screen. Use the control panel to set printer settings and to get information about the printer's status.

DDR Acronym for double data-rate.

default The normal or standard setting for hardware or software.

DHCP An acronym for "dynamic host configuration protocol." DHCP enables individual computers or peripherals connected to a network to automatically obtain their IP configuration from a DHCP server.

DIMM An acronym for "dual in-line memory module." A small circuit board that holds memory chips.

duplex A feature that allows printing on both sides of a sheet of paper.

EIO An acronym for "Enhanced Input/Output." A hardware interface used for adding an internal print server, network adaptor, hard disk, and other plug-in functionality for HP printers.

embedded Web server A server that is completely contained within a device. Embedded Web servers provide management information about the device. They are helpful for managing single devices on a small network. By using a Web browser to access an embedded Web server, network users can obtain network printer status updates, perform simple troubleshooting operations, change device configuration settings, and link to online customer support. When you need to manage many network devices, it is more effective to use an integrated Web server management tool, such as HP Web Jetadmin.

Emulated PostScript Software that emulates Adobe PostScript, a programming language that describes the appearance of the printed page.

firmware Programming instructions that are stored in a read-only memory unit inside the printer.

Flash memory card A small-sized, high-quality, removable memory card.

font A complete set of letters, numerals, and symbols in a typeface.

fuser The assembly that uses heat to fuse the toner onto the paper or other media.

grayscale Various shades of gray.

halftone pattern A halftone pattern uses differing sizes of ink dots to produce a continuous-tone image such as a photograph.

HP Jetdirect HP product for network printing.

HP Web Jetadmin HP trademarked device management software that lets you manage a single printer or multiple printers using a Web browser.

I/O An acronym for "input/output" and refers to computer port settings.

IP address The unique number assigned to a computer device connected to a network.

IPX/SPX An acronym for "internetwork packet exchange/sequenced packet exchange."

macro A single keystroke or command that results in a series of actions or instructions.

media The paper, labels, transparencies, or other material on which the printer prints the image.

memory tag A memory partition with a specific address.

MIME An acronym for Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions.

monochrome Black and white. Devoid of color.

mopy The HP term for "multiple original prints" capability.

network A system of computers interconnected by telephone wires or other means in order to share information.

network administrator A person who manages a network.

page buffer Temporary printer memory used to hold page data while the printer creates an image of the page.

parallel cable A type of computer cable often used to connect printers directly to a computer rather than to a network.

parallel port A connection point for a device connected with a parallel cable.

PCL An acronym for "Printer Control Language."

PDF An acronym for Portable Document Format. The native file format for Adobe Systems Incorporated Acrobat. PDF is the file format for representing documents in a manner that is independent of the original application software, hardware, and operating system used to create those documents.

peripheral An auxiliary device, such as a printer, modem, or storage system, that works in conjunction with a computer.

personality Distinctive features or characteristics of a printer or printer language.

pixel Abbreviation for "picture element," which is the smallest unit of area in an image displayed on a screen.

PJL An acronym for "Printer Job Language."

PostScript A trademarked page description language.

PPD An acronym for "PostScript Printer Description."

Print Task Quick Set A feature of the printer driver that allows you to save the current printer driver settings (for example: page orientation, two-sided printing, and paper sources) for reuse.

printer driver Software program that allows a computer to access printer features.

RAM An acronym for "random access memory," a type of computer memory used to store data that may change.

RARP An acronym for "Reverse Address Resolution Protocol," a protocol that enables a computer or peripheral to determine its own IP address.

raster image An image composed of dots.

render The process of outputting text or graphics.

RGB An acronym for colors red, green, and blue.

ROM An acronym for "read-only memory," a type of computer memory used to store data that should not be changed.

supplies Materials used by the printer that are used up and must be replaced. Supply items for the HP Color LaserJet 4700 printer are the four print cartridges, the transfer belt, and the fuser.

TCP/IP An internet protocol (developed by the U.S. Department of Defense) that has become the global standard for communications.

toner The fine black or colored powder that forms the image on the printed media.

transfer unit The black plastic belt that transports the media inside the printer and transfers the toner from the print cartridges onto the media.

tray A receptacle for holding blank media.

xerographic paper General term for paper intended for photocopy or laser printer use.

XHTML An acronym for extensible hypertext markup language.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

2-sided printing 125

A

accessories

hard disk 8

ordering 277

accessory port 86

address, printer

Macintosh, troubleshooting

243, 246

alerts

configuring 175

e-mail 147

auto continue 73

autocontinue black 249

automatic media sensing 95

auxiliary connection configuration

87

B

background printing,

troubleshooting 244

Bluetooth 89

booklets

printing 128

both sides, printing on 116, 122

C

canceled print job 134

cleaning page

using 172

clearable warnings

setting display time 72

clearing jams 216, 218, 220

clock

setting 148

CMYK samples

printing 144

color

adjusting 156

CMYK ink set emulation 153

edge control 157, 160

four-color printing 153

halftone options 157, 159

HP ImageREt 3600 152

managing options 156, 159

matching 154

neutral grays 158, 159

options 152

Pantone® matching 154

printed vs. monitor 154

printing color samples 155

printing in grayscale 156, 159

sample book matching 154

sRGB 152

using 152

color options

configuring 65

color supply out

reporting 74

solution for 249

Color tab settings 118, 123

color/black mix 65

configuration page

printing 142, 180

viewing with embedded Web

server 147

configure device menu 47, 53

configuring

alerts 175

configuring trays

custom paper size 99

from paper handling menu 98

control panel

accessing from computer 40

blank display 235

buttons 38, 41

configuring 64

display 38

lights 38, 42

menus 45, 46

overview 37, 38

printer personalities 72

problems 238

using in shared environments

78

control panel display

options 71

control panel messages 184

controlling print jobs 92

cover pages 115, 121

covers 121

custom paper sizes

driver settings 115

D

Declaration of Conformity 300

demo page

printing 144

Desktop Printer Utility,

troubleshooting 243

diagnostics menu 63

DIMMs (dual inline memory

modules)

installing 261

display brightness

setting 71

double-sided printing 116, 117,

122, 123, 125

driver autoconfiguration 12

drivers

accessing 20, 22

Help 20

Macintosh, troubleshooting

245

presets 121

quick sets 113

selecting 20

duplex printing

- binding options 127
- control panel settings 126
- manual 127
- duplex-printing accessory
 - loading 116, 122
- duplexing 116, 122

E

- e-mail alerts 147
- embedded Web server
 - checking toner level 163
 - description 17
 - ordering supplies 278
 - using 146
 - using to configure alerts 175
- enlarging documents 114
- envelopes
 - jams 233
 - loading in Tray 1 101
 - printing 101
- environmental features 8
- EPS files, troubleshooting 244, 247
- errors
 - auto continue 73
- event log
 - printing 145
 - viewing 147

F

- FCC regulations 296
- file directory page
 - printing 145
- first page
 - blank 115
 - use different paper 115
- first page, use different paper 121
- flash memory card
 - installing 268
- font list
 - printing 145
- fonts
 - EPS files, troubleshooting 244, 247
 - Macintosh, troubleshooting 244

G

- grayscale printing 156, 159

H

- Help, printer-driver 20
- host USB 86
- HP customer care iii
- HP Easy Printer Care Software
 - checking toner level 163
 - using 17, 149
- HP fraud hotline 162
- HP Jetdirect print servers
 - configuring 147
 - installing 273
- HP OpenVMS drivers 19
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - checking toner level 163
 - using to configure alerts 175

I

- I/O (input/output) menu 60
- I/O configuration
 - network configuration 80
- IBM OS/2 drivers 19
- IEEE 802.11b standard 89
- information menu 51
- information pages
 - CMYK samples page 144
 - configuration page 142
 - demo page 144
 - event log 145
 - file directory 145
 - menu map 142
 - PCL font list 145
 - PS font list 145
 - RGB samples 144
 - supplies status page 143
 - usage page 143
- input trays
 - capacities 33
 - configuring 52, 66, 97
- internal clock 148
- IP address
 - displaying 65
 - Macintosh, troubleshooting 243, 246

J

- jam recovery
 - setting 75
- jams
 - common causes 212
 - configuring alerts 175

- envelopes 233
- locations 210
- recovery 210
- stapler/stacker 220
- stapler/stacker duplex path 221
- staples 227
- top cover area 216
- Jetdirect print servers
 - configuring 147
- job held timeout 64
- job offset 129, 131
- job storage 7, 135
- job storage limit 64

L

- language
 - changing 76
 - embedded Web server 147
 - selecting 76
- lights 42, 43
- links
 - information 2
- Linux drivers 19

M

- Macintosh
 - background printing 244
 - drivers, accessing 21, 22
 - drivers, troubleshooting 245
 - fonts, troubleshooting 244
 - problems, troubleshooting 243
 - USB card, troubleshooting 244, 247
- maintenance
 - agreements 287
- media
 - automatic sensing 95
 - custom sizes, setting 115
 - document size, selecting 114
 - first page 121
 - first page 115
 - loading Tray 2 and optional trays 103, 105, 107
 - maximum size 8
 - pages per sheet 115, 122
 - type 8
 - weight 8
- memory

- adding 140, 259
- enabling 272
- managing 140
- menu map
 - description 51
 - printing 142
- menus
 - configure device 53
 - diagnostics 63
 - hierarchy 46
 - I/O (input/output) 60
 - information 51
 - paper handling 52
 - print quality 54
 - printing 53
 - resets 62
 - retrieve job 50
 - stapler/stacker 59
 - system setup 56
- message types 183
- messages
 - critical 183
 - error 183
 - status 183
 - warning 183
- mopier mode 137
- multiple pages per sheet 115, 122

N

- n-up printing 115, 122
- networks
 - administrative tools 18
 - configuring 80
 - configuring with embedded Web server 148
 - default gateway 82
 - disabling DLC/LLC 83
 - disabling IPX/SPX 83
 - disabling protocols 82
 - IP address 80
 - software 16
 - subnet mask 81
 - TCP/IP parameters 80

O

- order at
 - supplies 74
- OS/2 drivers 19

P

- pages per sheet 115, 122
- paper
 - custom sizes, setting 115
 - document size, selecting 114
 - first page 115, 121
 - pages per sheet 115, 122
- paper handling 8
- paper handling menu 52
- paper orientation
 - stapler/stacker 132
- paper path test page
 - printing 180
- paper specifications 33
- parallel configuration 85
- passwords
 - network 147
- PCL drivers
 - selecting 20
- PCL font list 145
- personality
 - setting 72
- PIN (personal identification number)
 - private jobs 136
- ports
 - troubleshooting Macintosh 244, 247
- PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files
 - troubleshooting 243
- PPDs
 - troubleshooting 243
- preconfiguration 12
- presets 121
- print cartridge
 - authentication 162
 - checking toner levels 163
 - genuine HP 162
 - life expectancy 163
 - managing 162
 - non-HP 162
 - replacing 164
 - storing 163
- Print Document On 114
- print media
 - colored paper 110
 - envelopes 110
 - for color printing 152
 - glossy paper 109

- heavy paper 110
- labels 110
- letterhead 111
- media to avoid 94
- preprinted forms 111
- printing from Tray 1 100
- recycled paper 112
- selecting 94
- specifications 33
- supported sizes 33
- supported types 33
- supported weights 33
- Tough paper 111
- transparencies 109
- print quality
 - diagnosing problems 254
 - print quality defects 254
 - repetitive defect ruler 253
- print quality menu 54
- print server card
 - installing 273
- print servers
 - configuring 147
- Printer 8
- printer
 - accessories 8
 - connectivity 9
 - drivers 19, 22
 - fonts 8
 - maintenance 161
 - managing 141
 - performance 7
 - personalities 7
- printer basics 1
- printer components
 - locating 10
- printer configurations 4, 64
- printer driver
 - Services tab 119
- printer features
 - walk around 10
- printer information
 - access 2
- printer information pages
 - troubleshooting 180
- printer personalities 72
- printer settings
 - configure 53
- printer software 12
- printer supplies 9

- printing
 - booklets 128
 - canceling 134
 - special media 109
 - special situations 133
- printing envelopes 101
- printing from optional trays 102
- printing from Tray 2 102
- printing menu 53
- printing tasks 91
- private jobs
 - deleting 137
 - printing 136
- problem solving 177
- product stewardship 297
- PS drivers
 - selecting 20

Q

- quick sets 113

R

- RAM (random access memory) 7
- RAM disk
 - setting behavior 76
- recycling
 - print cartridge 297
- reducing documents 114
- registration page
 - printing 181
- regulations
 - FCC 296
- replace color supplies
 - reporting 73
- resets menu 62
- resizing documents 114
- restricting color printing 148, 158, 249
- retrieve job menu 50
- RGB samples
 - printing 144

S

- safety statements
 - AC cordset (Japan) 301
 - Canadian DOC 301
 - Japanese VCCI 301
 - Korean EMI 301
 - laser safety 301
 - laser safety for Finland 302
- scaling documents 114

- security page 147
- servers
 - configuring 147
- service
 - agreements 287
- Services tab 119
- settings
 - driver presets 121
 - embedded Web server 147
 - quick sets 113
- show address 65
- sleep delay
 - changing settings 69
 - disabling 70
 - enabling 70
 - time 69
- sleep mode 69
- software
 - applications 18
 - HP Easy Printer Care 17
 - installing 13
 - macintosh 24
 - networks 16
 - uninstalling 15
 - utilities 17
- special media
 - printing 109
- special situations
 - blank back cover 133
 - custom-sized media 133
 - different first page 133
 - printing 133
- specifications
 - acoustic 292
 - dimensions 290
 - electrical 291
 - humidity 293
 - temperature 293
- stapler
 - jams 227
 - selecting at control panel 131
 - selecting from application 130
- stapler cartridge
 - replacing 168
- stapler/stacker
 - configuring 129
 - indicator lights 43
 - jams 220, 221
 - job offset 131
 - menu 59

- paper orientation 132
- printing to 130
- stapling 129
- stapling
 - in applications 130
- stapling options 118
- status
 - e-mail alerts 147
- stopping a print request 134
- storing jobs
 - deleting 136
 - printing 135
 - private jobs 136
 - proof and hold jobs 135
 - quick-copying 138
 - storing 138
- subnet mask 81
- supplies
 - locating 167
 - ordering 277
 - replacement intervals 168
 - replacing 167
 - status 147
 - status page 147
- supplies low
 - configuring alerts 175
 - ordering reminder 74
- supplies out
 - configuring alerts 175
- supplies status page
 - description 51
 - printing 143
- system setup menu 56

T

- tray 1 117, 123
- tray behavior 66
- trays
 - double-sided printing 117, 123
- troubleshooting
 - checklist 178
 - color printing problems 249
 - control panel problems 238
 - duplexing 234
 - EPS files 244, 247
 - incorrect printer output 239
 - jams 210
 - Macintosh problems 243
 - media handling problems 230

- overhead transparencies 251
- print quality 251
- printer response 235
- software applications 241
- transparencies 233
- two-sided printing
 - control panel settings 126
 - manual 127

U

- UNIX drivers 19
- Update Now 12
- usage page
 - description 51
 - printing 143
- USB configuration 86
- USB port
 - troubleshooting Macintosh 244, 247
- Use Different Paper/Covers 115
- user interface 7

W

- Wake time
 - changing 70
- wake time
 - setting 70
- warranty
 - print cartridge 285
 - product 283, 284
 - transfer unit 286
- watermarks
 - cover page 121
- Windows
 - drivers, accessing 20
- wireless printing
 - 802.11b standard 89
 - Bluetooth 89
- wrong printer, sending to 243



* Q7491 - 90953 *

* Q7491 - 90953 *

Q7491-90953